REPORT RESUMES

ED 019 661 48 AL 001 104

INTRODUCTORY URDU. VOLUME I (PHONOLOGY, SCRIPT, AND GRAMMAR).

BY- NAIM, C.M. AND OTHERS

PUB DATE 65

EDRS PRICE MF-$1.50 HC-$14.04 349P.

DESCRIPTORS- *URDU, PHONOLOGY, WRITING, GRAMMAR, TAPE RECORDINGS, *LANGUAGE INSTRUCTION, *INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS, PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION,

AN EXPLANATION OF THE STATUS OF URDU, ONE OF THE TWO OFFICIAL LANGUAGES OF PAKISTAN, AND ITS RELATIONSHIP TO HINDI PREFACES THIS URDU LANGUAGE TEXT. PREPARED AS A TWO-SEMESTER INTRODUCTORY COURSE FOR STUDENTS INTERESTED IN A THOROUGH KNOWLEDGE OF WRITTEN URDU, THIS FIRST VOLUME CONSISTS OF (1) A SECTION ON PHONOLOGY, SUPPLEMENTED BY TAPES, (2) A SECTION ON THE SCRIPT, WHICH IS A MODIFIED FORM OF THE ARABIC SCRIPT CONTAINING SOME PERSIAN INNOVATIONS AS WELL AS SOME OF ITS OWN FOR SOUNDS PECULIAR TO URDU, (3) A "SKELETON" GRAMMAR, AND (4) AN URDU-ENGLISH GLOSSARY WITH THE URDU APPEARING IN BOTH URDU SCRIPT AND TRANSCRIPTION. EACH SECTION INCLUDES DRILLS AND EXERCISES. THIS TEXT WAS PUBLISHED BY THE SOUTH ASIA LANGUAGE AND AREA CENTER, UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO, CHICAGO, ILLINOIS 60637. THE SUPPLEMENTARY PHONOLOGY TAPES ARE AVAILABLE FROM THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO LANGUAGE LABORATORY, CHICAGO, ILLINOIS 60637. (AMM)

FILMED FROM BEST
AVAILABLE COPY

ED019661

No BR No
PA 48

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION & WELFARE
OFFICE OF EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL OFFICE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY.

Introductory Urdu

vol. I

(Phonology, Script, and Grammar)

by

C. M. Naim

with

Q. S. Ahmad

S. S. Nadvi

and

M. A. Haq

South Asia Language and Area Center
University of Chicago
Chicago
1965

AL 001 104

349

The research reported herein was performed pursuant to a contract with the United States Office of Education, Department of Health, Education, and Welfare.

Preface

There are now, in 1965, nearly thirty-three million speakers of Urdu in the subcontinent of India and Pakistan. In addition, there are a few million more who did not give Urdu as their mother-tongue in the census, but who understand and employ Urdu when an occasion arises. The literary history of Urdu goes back to the fifteenth century, while linguistic specimens are found as early as the thirteenth century. At present it is one of the two official languages of Pakistan, (the other being Bengali), and one of the sixteen languages recognized in the Indian Constitution. Urdu literature is flourishing in both the countries, where prizes are given every year for best books in the language. It is used by Hindus and Muslims alike, and its major centers, Lahore, Aligarh, Lucknow, Karachi, Delhi, Hyderabad, and Bombay, are scattered over the subcontinent.

Any mention of Urdu immediately brings up the question: how does Urdu differ from Hindi? It is not an easy question to answer, for while at one level the two speech-forms may show no differentiation at all, at another level they may become mutually quite unintelligible. The truth of the matter is that in the entire Hindi-Urdu regional area, or for all the speakers of Urdu and Hindi, there are a number of speech varieties of which more than one are known by every speaker. It is this fact which makes it possible for any given speaker of Urdu to communicate, in what he considers to be Urdu, with any other given speaker of Hindi, who in turn would call his language Hindi. But this state of affairs exists essentially at the level of simple oral communication. Hindi and Urdu begin to differ considerably when they are put into writing or when the subject matter of the discourse is more serious. Though, even at the spoken level, there are certain phonological differences between the two; some of these we shall mention below.

At the phonological level the most obvious difference between Hindi and Urdu is in the phonemic inventory of the two. Urdu has four consonants, x, G, q, and ', which Hindi does not have. On the other hand, Hindi has a retroflex nasal, which is not found in Urdu.

Urdu has fewer initial consonant clusters, both in number and type -- mostly these are consonant plus l or r or y. Hindi has many more initial consonant clusters. For final consonant clusters, Urdu has such types as m plus a non-harmonic stop or spirant, or h plus consonant, or a large variety of consonants followed by s or l; all of these types are not found in Hindi. On the other hand, Hindi has more clusters with final aspirated consonants as well as such combinations as consonant plus w and consonant plus y, which do not occur in Urdu.

With reference to vowels, Hindi and Urdu do not differ drastically. The most important difference is that Hindi has final short vowels, i, u, and a, while Urdu has only a final short i. Other differences are merely allophonic. (For more details see Formal and Informal Standards in the Hindi Regional Language Area by John J. Gumperz and C. M. Naim. In International Journal of American Linguistics, part III, volume 26, number 3, 1960, pp. 92-118.)

At the morphological level differences between Hindi and Urdu are mostly a matter of different vocabularies. There are, however, certain other features which can be pointed out. In indirect constructions in which [caahiyee] is used, we find that Urdu also has a plural form, [caahiyẽẽ]. Thus Hindi:

mujhee kitaab caahiyee	I need a book.
mujhee kitaabẽẽ caahiyee	I need books.

But Urdu:

mujhee kitaab caahiyee	I need a book.
mujhee kitaabẽẽ caahiyẽẽ	I need books.

Similarly in another type of indirect construction, Hindi usually has the infinitive -- functioning as a gerundive -- agreeing with the grammatical subject of the verb, while Urdu has more possibilities

Hindi:

mujhee kuch kitaabẽẽ xariidnii hãĩ — I need to buy some books.

Urdu:

1. mujhee kuch kitaabẽẽ xariidnii hãĩ — ditto
2. mujhee kuch kitaabẽẽ xariidnaa hãĩ — ditto
3. mujhee kuch kitaabẽẽ xariidnaa hai — ditto

If, in constructions in which a conjuctive participle is used to refer to the first act in a series of two, the first act is in some sense a "cause" for the second act, Hindi allows -- even prefers -- that the conjunctive ending, [-kar], be dropped and only the root of the first verb should be used. In Urdu, the use of a conjunctive participle is always required. Thus Hindi:

un-koo deekh meerii ããkhõõ-mẽẽ ããsuu bhar-aaee — My eyes moistened on seeing him.

But Urdu:

un-koo deekh-kar meerii ããkhõõ-mẽẽ ããsuu bhar aaee — ditto

But the following sentence will be the same in both Hindi and Urdu.

un-see jaa-kar miliyee — Please go and meet him.

Another thing that immediately strikes one's eyes is the use in Hindi of [yah] and [wah] for singular demonstrative pronominal reference and [yee] and [wee] for the plural. In Urdu there are only [yee] and [eoo], though the written forms in Urdu also end in h.

Other differences between the two arise mostly from the fact that Hindi borrows its learned vocabulary from Sanksrit, while Urdu takes from Persian and Arabic. There are, therefore, derivational suffixes and prefixes in Urdu which are not found in Hindi, as well as adverbial words and phrases. Urdu also uses [izaafat] -- a device borrowed from Persian -- to make nominal compounds, and also another conjunction, [-wa-]. These are not used in Hindi. At a more minor level, there are certain nouns which are masculine in Urdu but feminine in Hindi, and vice versa.

Beside the difference in learned vocabulary, the other most obvious difference between Hindi and Urdu is that the first uses the Devanagari script -- written from left to right -- while the latter uses a modified form of the Perso-Arabic script, written from right to left. Thus, we can conclude that, for all practical purposes, a book of literary essays in Urdu or an editorial in an Urdu newspaper would be quite unintelligible to a person who has no background in Urdu but who is learned in Hindi, and vice versa. At the same time, political developments in the subcontinent have created conditions in which it is likely that the two languages will continue to draw apart more and more.

It has been a common practice in this country to teach Hindi and Urdu jointly at the introductory level, emphasizing the market idiom shared by the two. As students advance, they find they have to learn more and more specialized vocabulary and constructions, much of which could have been covered in the first year if the emphasis had been on the written language. We have essentially two types of students of Urdu in this country; the first, those who intend to go off to India or Pakistan immediately after the first year, and want a quick grasp of the spoken language; the other, those who intend to study Urdu in this country for at least two to three years before going abroad, and whose purpose of study requires that they should know the literary language well. It follows, therefore, that the latter would benefit more if they were brought into contact with the Urdu tradition from the very beginning. This textbook has been prepared with just that purpose in mind; our objective was to prepare a two-semester (three-quarter) introductory course in Urdu for use of students interested in a thorough knowledge of the written language.

The book as it stands now consists of two volumes. The first volume contains a section on phonology (supplemented by tapes which are available from the University of Chicago Language Laboratory, Chicago 37, Illinois), a section on the script, and a skeleton grammar, which is supplemented by exercises and a glossary. The second volume contains various types of texts for reading. In the beginning are given four brief conversations which are to serve as model lessons; to this purpose they have been provided with full grammatical discussions. Then there are twenty-six short prose pieces, most of which were selected from textbooks, newspapers, and standard essays. At the end there are two selections each from the Quran and the Bible in Urdu translation and one newspaper column in the form of a scenario.

Except for the last five selections, all have been provided with serial glossaries, cultural and grammatical notes, and exercises. In the exercises, the first section contains what we refer to as "situational variants." In this section we have tried to show how the ideas expressed in one manner in the text can be expressed in another manner, and thus to forestall the student from setting up any wrong one-to-one correspondences between English and Urdu. The second section contains sentences in which the more important vocabulary and grammatical constructions that occur in the text are repeated in other contexts. In other words, while the "situation" remains constant in the first set of sentences and the vocabulary changes, it is the vocabulary which remains constant in the second section, while the situation changes. The third section consists of sentences selected from the text and left with blanks to be filled by the student, to help him memorize the more significant vocabulary and constructions. Then there are some sentences to be translated from English into Urdu, using the vocabulary and grammar exemplified in the text. Finally there are questions in Urdu concerning the contents of the text and which are to be answered in Urdu. At the end of every two or three units there is a review exercise consisting of fifty sentences, in which the more significant grammar and vocabulary of the preceding units are repeated for further emphasis.

The teaching plan that underlies the arrangement and contents of our textbook is as follows. In the beginning the students are given a brief lecture on the phonology, after which they are considered responsible for listening to the tapes and practicing on their own. Then follows instruction in the script and a quick survey of the grammar as provided in the book. The latter is to help them prepare for what they can expect to find in the language in the way of grammar. We have found from our experience in the classroom that most adult students prefer to have some kind of a larger perspective within which they can fit smaller individual pieces. As soon as the script lessons are finished, students can be asked to do the grammar exercises, preferably in the class and with the help of the teacher. The first four units of the second volume are to be read and discussed in the class; they are also intended as models for the teacher to follow in later units. The teacher should instruct the students to refer again and again to the grammar sections and to make use of the notes given with the various units.

We expect that at the end of one year the student would have finished the first thirty units of our textbook. After that he can be expected to go on into the second year and begin with either the easier units in our Readings in Urdu: Prose and Poetry (East-West Center Press, 1965), or some other second-year textbook.

The last five selections in the second volume of this book have been added only to make them easily available to students of theology, who might be interested in reading the Scriptures, or to those who are interested in problems of translation.

The writer is indebted to the Directors of the South Asia Language and Area Center for providing him the opportunity to work on this book, and to his associates, Q. S. Ahmad, S. S. Nadvi, and M. A. Haq, whose devotion and cooperation brought the work to fulfillment. He should also express his gratitude to his colleague, K. C. Bahl, whose lectures on Hindi grammar he found most instructive and inspiring and whose advice helped him understand many a problem of Urdu grammar. A special note of thanks to Miss Janetta Moxley and Mrs. Phyllis Downes for preparing the English part of the manuscript, and to Mr. Muslehuddin Shahi and others for writing the Urdu part.

The research reported herein was performed pursuant to a contract with the United States Office of Education, Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, which in no way is responsible for any of the materials presented or the manner of their presentation.

C. M. Naim

Chicago, October 6, 1965

PHONOLOGY

Urdu Phonology

The following are the sounds of Urdu:

Consonants:

	Bilabial	Dental	Retroflex	Palatal	Velar	Post-Velar	Glottal	
I.								
Voiceless, unaspirated	p	t	T	c	k	q	'	
Voiced, unaspirated	b	d	D	j	g			
Voiceless, aspirated	ph	th	Th	ch	kh			
Voiced, aspirated	bh	dh	Dh	jh	gh			
II.								
Voiceless	f	s		S(š)	x			
Voiced	w	z		Z(ž)	G			
III.	m	n	y	r	R	Rh	l	h
IV.	mh	nh	lh					

Vowels: a aa e ee i ii o oo u uu ae au

Nasalization: ~

Note 1: The first set contains mostly stop consonants; they have been put in a chart which roughly indicates their phonetic nature and their relationship with each other. A few of the consonants, however, need a further word of explanation

1. /q/ is pronounced further back in the throat than /k/, which is similar to the English k. (See note 5 below) In articulating /q/ the back of the tongue presses against the uvula to form the closure.

2. /'/ is classified as a glottal stop; it is of rare occurence, mostly found between two short vowels. It is not as emphatically pronounced as the glottal stop of Arabic; the constriction in the throat is short and tentative in its case.

3. Beside distinguishing between voiced and voiceless stops, Urdu also has contrasting sets of aspirated and unaspirated consonants. Thus Urdu /p/ and /k/, for example, contrast not only with /b/ and /g/ but also with /ph/ and /kh/. The unaspirated consonants are always pronounced without aspiration, in contrast with English where p and k are pronounced with distinct aspiration in the beginning of a word, as in "cat" and "pin." In other words English "pun" is similar in pronunciation to Urdu /phan/ and not to Urdu /pan/; likewise Urdu /k/ in /kin/ is similar to the English k in "skin" and not to the initial sound of "kin."

There are also aspirated voiced stops as well as an aspirated retroflex flap, /Rh/. (See below notes)

4. In Urdu there is a set of retroflex sounds. These are /T, Th, D, Dh, R, Rh/. In pronouncing these sounds the tongue is drawn back and the underside of the tip of the tongue, rather than the upper surface, forms the closure against the hard palate, above the alveolar ridge. In pronouncing the dentals, the upper surface of the tip of the tongue touches the back of the teeth.

/R/ and/Rh/ are unaspirated and aspirated retroflex flaps, respectively. Again the tongue is drawn back and a contact is made against the hard palate, but instead of a sustained and slowly broken closure, as for /T/ and /D/, the tongue is flipped forward in a quick movement.

5. /c/ and /j/ are put among the stops though they are pronounced with a little friction. However, they are not as strong affricates as English ch and j. In pronouncing them care should be taken to reduce the affricate effect, and also make sure of the lack or presence of aspiration.

6. /w/ is not a bilabial sound as it is in English; it is pronounced with the upper teeth making a slight contact with the back of the lower lip; however, it is not as emphatic as English v.

7. /Z/ is of rare occurence; it is like the sound of s in "vision." /C/ and /Z/ are not retroflex sounds.

8. /x/ represents a voiceless velar fricative; it is pronounced with the back of the tongue constricting (not closing) the passage at the top of the throat. /G/ is its voiced counterpart. /x/ is similar to the German pronounciation of x ch, as in "doch;" /G/ sounds very much like the French uvular r, though it is not at all trilled and pronounced very lenis.

9. American students often have a lot of trouble in correctly pronouncing the Urdu /r/. In Urdu it is pronounced by more than one quick taps by the tip of the tongue against the ridge of the upper teeth; there is hardly if any friction in its pronunciation. It is always pronounced clearly and is never assimilated or lost in any environment.

10. The three aspirated consonants given at the end of the list are of rare occurence. In many words where these sounds occur, they are replaced by an identical consonant cluster, the first consonant of which goes with the preceding syllable and the second, with the following. However many people pronounce them as single units like the other aspirates.

11. In our chart of the Urdu sounds we have indicated only two nasals, /m/ and /n/. /m/ represents a bilabial nasal; /n/ represents a dental nasal, as well as a retroflex nasal, a palatal nasal and a velar nasal when it is immediately followed by a retroflex, a palatal, or a velar stop in the same word. In other words, before a consonant /n/ represents a nasal homorganic with that stop. Examples;

Dental nasal	/candaa/, /sant/
Retroflex nasal	/anDaa/, /canT/
Palatal nasal	/panjaa/, /panc/
Velar nasal	/gangaa/, /pankh/

However, strictly in terms of phonemics and on the basis of a very small number of words, it is possible to set up another nasal phoneme for Urdu, a velar nasal, /ŋ/. This phonemic contrast between the dental nasal and the velar nasal is restricted to the environment /-k/. Examples:

/mankaa/	"bridge of the nose"	(Dental nasal)
/sankii/	"eccentric"	(Dental nasal)
/laŋkaa/	"Ceylon"	(Velar nasal)
/baŋkii/	"Banki"	(Velar nasal)

One can add that a further elaboration of the context will indicate that if it were not for a few words like /lankaa/ and /bankii/, /n/ and /n/ can still be shown to be in complementary distribution: a dental nasal before /k/, a velar nasal before /g/ and other nasals before other homorganic consonants.

Anyway, though recognizing the theoretical need for setting up a separate velar nasal phoneme we have not done so, mainly for the sake of simplicity. In our transcription /n/ represents a dental nasal, or, in clusters, a nasal homorganic with the stop that follows it. The exceptions to this rule, words like /sankii/ and /mankaa/, will have a note indicating the nature of their nasal.

Note 2: There are six pairs of short and long vowels, beside the two inherently long vowels, /ae/ and /au/. Among the short vowels, /e/ and /o/ are infrequent and usually occur in loanwords from the English. The long vowels are indicated by writing the symbol twice; this does not mean that a short vowel is pronounced twice in order to be called a long vowel. The long vowels are pronounced as one long and sustained breath pulse, without any ceasura. Likewise /ae/ and /au/ are not diphthongs or clusters of two short vowels; they are inherently long vowels, similar to the vowels in "cat" and "Lord" respectively.

The Urdu long vowels are pure, i.e. they are not pronounced with a following glide as the English vowels in "gate", "beat" and "suit" are.

There are also a few diphthongs in Urdu which are not given here but will be given in the exercises and the tapes.

Word Stress

Every Urdu word when pronounced in isolation has one phonetically prominent syllable. When pronounced together in a sentence some of these words may occur unstressed in relation to others, while a particular word or phrase, carrying the main burden of contents, may appear more prominently stressed than the others. That one main stress in a sentence will be referred to as "sentence stress", and the chief thing to bear in mind regarding it is that sentence stress does not necessarily mean a rise in the pitch; that it is essentially a matter of relative loudness. As for word stress in Urdu, it is predictable, as will be shown below.

The following are the canonical forms of the possible monosyllabic words in Urdu. (C = consonant; v = short vowel; V = long vowel)

v;Cv;vC;vCC;CvC;CvCC
V;CV;CCV;VC;CVC;CVCC

Of the above canonical forms, three are restricted in their occurrence. CCV occurs only at the beginning of words. Both CvCC and CVCC occur only word final. Keeping these restrictions in mind, we can analyze the multi-syllabic words of Urdu in terms of the above canonical forms, too. The principle of division can be stated to be: (1) simple consonant goes with the following syllable; (2) two medial consonants will have a syllable boundary in between them.

hickicaahaT = hic + ki + caa + haT
nazaakatẽẽ = na + zaa + ka + tẽẽ
šaguftagii = ša + guf + ta + gii

For predicting word stress in Urdu, we classify these canonical forms as follows.

0. v;Cv
1. vC;CvC;V;CV;CCV
2. VC;CVC;CvCC;vCC;CVCC

The above classification is intended to set up an ascending degree of "heaviness" as shown by the numbers, 0, 1, and 2. The rule for word stress in Urdu can now be stated as follows. The stress will be on the heaviest syllable; but if there are two or more equally heavy syllables, the stress will be on the one which is closer to the end but is not actually the last syllable. In the following examples the stressed syllables have been underlined.

hickicaahaT = 1 + 0 + 1 + 1
nazaakatẽẽ = 0 + 1 + 0 + 1
šaguftagii = 0 + 1 + 0 + 1
mardaangii = 1 + 2 + 1
aadat = 1 + 1
libaas = 0 + 2
sazaa = 0 + 1

Medial clusters of vowels, unless pronounced with deliberation, tend to merge into each other, in which case they behave in the same way as diphthongs: the stress occurs on the onset.

	kaii	pronounced in normal conversation
	gaii	pronounced in normal conversation
But,	gaii	pronounced as if to make the ending clear
	jaaẽẽgee	normal pronunciation

As mentioned earlier, each syllable of a word pronounced in isolation is given full quantitative value. Within a sentence, however, postpositions, particles, and verbal auxiliaries tend to be pronounced unstressed and are often shortened in the process. The chief word within the sentence, from the point of view of the context, will carry a sentence stress. At the same time at least one word in each phrase within the sentence will carry its original word stress. The presence of so many stressed syllables and the need to distinguish between quantitatively different vowels, make it necessary that Urdu should have a less slurred and less staccato, and a more stretched out and more quantitatively definable pronunciation, both with isolated words and longer sentences.

Intonation

It is sufficient, in order to describe the basic intonational patterns of Urdu, to set up three degrees of pitches. These degrees are relative to each other and not absolute; the phonetic reality of pitch 1 in one sentence may be the same as of pitch 2 in another sentence. In other words, a Urdu sentence will begin at one pitch and, later in the sentence, would either go up one level or go down one level. No sentence ever begins with the lowest level of pitch. The lowest level of pitch is found either at the end of the sentence or before medial pauses at the end of phrases. We shall number these pitches as follows.

0 1 2

The occurrence of pitch 2 does not necessarily coincide with the occurrence of sentence stress (S). The reverse is not true, either. Beside the three numbers above, we shall use two more two-figure numbers to indicate whether the fall after 2 is sharp and short or gradual and lengthened out. These are 20 and 21 respectively. In comparison with 21, the initial pitch rise in 20 is sharper, too. In our examples we shall indicate the pitch levels underneath the sentences.

Below we shall describe six types of sentences, defined in terms of their contents, and the relevant intonation patterns. Under each heading we shall give two examples with the intonation marked out underneath them, and a number of similar sentences. We think it would be better for the students to listen to their instructor's pronunciation than to tapes, in order to learn these intonational patterns. Putting these sentences on tapes would not have allowed for regional variations or contextual innuendoes which are best explained orally in the class by a native speaker. In any case, with the help of our examples the class should be able to interpret any native speaker's speech in terms of a three pitch system. Underlined words in the English gloss are to help recognize any intended emphasis. Symbols within brackets are alternates.

1. Declarative sentences: 1 21 1(0)

mãĩ kal un-see milnee gayaa thaa	I had gone to visit him
1 1 0 S 21 0	yesterday.
yee acchii bhii hai, aur sastii bhii	This is good as well as
1 S 21 0 S 21 1	cheap.

1. aaj raat-koo too jaa-saktee hãĩ
2. laRkii-nee un-see baat kii thii
3. phuulõõ-kii xušbuu-see saaraa baaG mahak-rahaa thaa
4. jaldii karẽẽgee tab bhii deer hoo-jaaeegii
5. jitnaa hoo-saktaa thaa, kiyaa gayaa thaa

2. "Yes or no" type questions: 1 20 (2)

kyaa aap-nee khaanaa khaa-liyaa?	Have you had supper?
1 1 S 1 20	
woo aaj saweeree jaa-rahee hãĩ?	Is he going this morning?
1 S 20 2 2 2 2	

1. kyaa woo aaj aa-saktaa hai?
2. yee sac hai, woo jaa-rahee hãĩ?
3. woo un-kaa chooTaa bhaai too nahĩĩ?
4. kyaa unhõõ-nee un-see baat kii thii?
5. gaaRii too ab chuuTnee-waalii hoogii?

3. Descriptive questions: 1 21 1(2)

woo saahab kaun hãĩ	Who is that gentleman?
S 1 1 21 1	
un saahab-kaa naam kyaa hai	What's that gentleman's
1 1 S 21 1 1	name?

(Note that it is not necessary for interrogative words in the sentence to also have the highest pitch.)

1. un-kaa makaan kis saRak-par hai
2. aap meeree liyee baazaar-see kyaa laaẽẽgee
3. un-kaa iskuul yahãã-see kitnii duur hai
4. is baaree-mẽẽ aap-kaa kyaa xayaal hai
5. eek taraf-kaa kitnaa kiraayaa paRtaa hai

4. Vocative sentences: 1 2

ahmad	Ahmad!
1 2	
bhaaii saahab	Please sir!
1 1 S 2	

1. ajii šakiil saahab
2. aree oo bhaaii saahab

20

3. jumman
4. safiyaa beeTii
5. janaab-e-sadr

5. Exclamatory sentences: 1 2(21) 1(0)

un-kii saaRii kitnii acchii hai — How fine is her sari!
1 1 S 2 1 0

un-kee ghar-kaa too kyaa kahnaa — What can we say about his house.
1 S 1 21 1

(Note that in such exclamatory sentences are used what were originally interrogative words. These words often have their long vowels extra long for added emphasis.)

1. kitnii acchii baat kahii us šaxs-nee
2. is kitaab-kee itnee zyaadaa daam
3. kitnee mazee-kii baat jugindar-nee kal kahii
4. yee caandnii kaisii acchii lagtii hai
5. is kaam-kee liyee mujhee pareešaan kartee hoo

6. Imperative sentences: 1 2 1(0;2)

In imperative sentences the final pitch can be 2, if the last word is also the imperative form, or, if other words follows the imperative form, either 0 or 1. But if the speaker wants really to cajole the addressee, he can end the sentence with another 2 after the original final 1.

zaraa woo kitaab deenaa — Give me that book please.
1 S 1 1 2

aree ab maan bhii jaaiyee na — Come now, forget and forgive.
1 S 2 1 1 2

1. yee kitaabẽẽ un-koo dee-diijiyee
2. fursat hoo, too un-kee paas bhii calee-jaanaa

3. kaam xatm-kar-kee fauran baazaar jaaoo
4. ajii saahab, wahãã-tak caliyee too
5. mehr-baanii kar-kee un-kee paas na jaaiyee

After going over these examples it should be clear that though normally sentence stress will occur simultaneously with highest pitch, it is possible for it to occur differently if the word with the highest pitch happens to be an unambiguous marker of interrogation, exclamation, or request.

Phonetic Drills

1. Long and short vowels: The distinction between long and short vowels is very important in Urdu. The long vowels are pronounced clear, that is, without a glide as in English words, feet, suit, date, etc. Listen to the following pairs of words.

1.	pal	paal	2.	paalaa	palaa
3.	nal	naal	4.	naalaa	nalaa
5.	pis	piis	6.	piisii	pisii
7.	din	diin	8.	diinii	dinii
9.	gul	guul	10.	guuluu	guluu
11.	mug	muug	12.	muuguu	muguu

Repeat after the tape.

1.1.	jal	jaal	jalaa	jaalaa
	jalan	jaalan	jalnaa	jaalnaa
	pal	paal	palaa	paalaa
	palan	paalan	palnaa	paalnaa
	bad	baad	badaa	baadaa
	badan	baadan	badnaa	baadnaa
1.2.	jal	jalan	jalaan	jaalaan
	dar	daraz	daraaz	daaraaz
	ras	rasad	rasaad	raasaad
	nam	namaz	namaaz	naamaaz
	bas	basar	basaar	baasaar
	lap	lapak	lapaak	laapaak
	saf	safar	safaar	saafaar
1.3.	jaal	jaalan	jalaa	jaalan
	kaal	kaalan	kalaa	kaalan
	daam	daaman	damaa	daaman
	baat	baatan	bataa	baatan
	gaal	gaalan	galaa	gaalan
	zaad	zaadan	zadaa	zaadan

1.4.	pul	puul	puuluu	puluu
	gul	guul	guuluu	guluu
	dun	duun	duunuu	dunuu
	cuk	cuuk	cuukuu	cukuu
	jub	juub	juubuu	jubuu
1.5.	pulaa	pulan	puulaa	puulan
	bulaa	bulan	buulaa	buulan
	gudaa	gudan	guudaa	guudan
	curaa	curan	cuuraa	cuuran
1.6.	curan	cuuran	curaa	cuuraa
	bulan	buulan	bulaa	buulaa
	gudan	guudan	gudaa	guudaa
	pulan	puulan	pulaa	puulaa
1.7.	bul	buul	baalun	baaluu
	cul	cuul	caalun	caaluu
	gum	guum	gaamun	gaamuu
	zum	zuum	zaamun	zaamuu
1.8.	caman	cuman	caaman	cuuman
	batan	butan	baatan	buutan
	butun	batun	buutun	baatun
	cumun	camun	cuumun	caamun
1.9.	pil	piil	piilii	pilii
	gil	giil	giilii	gilii
	din	diin	diinii	dinii
	cik	ciik	ciikii	cikii
	bin	biin	biinii	binii
1.10.	pilaa	pilan	piilaa	piilan
	bitaa	bitan	biitaa	biitan
	zimaa	ziman	ziimaa	ziiman
	fidaa	fidan	fiidaa	fiidan
1.11.	pilan	piilan	piilaa	piilaan
	pitan	biitan	biitaa	biitaan
	ziman	ziiman	ziimaa	ziimaan
	fidan	fiidan	fiidaa	fiidaan

1.12.	gir	giir	gaarid	gaarii
	pil	piil	paaliS	paalii
	Sig	Siig	Saagim	Saagii
	jit	jiit	jaatin	jaatii
1.13.	paa	aap	gaa	aag
	zaa	aaz	faa	aaf
	maa	aam	jaa	aaj
	laa	aal	daa	aad
1.14.	puu	uup	guu	uug
	zuu	uuz	fuu	uuf
	muu	uum	juu	uuj
	luu	uul	duu	uud
1.15.	pii	iip	gii	iig
	zii	iiz	fii	iif
	mii	iim	jii	iij
	lii	iil	dii	iid
1.16.	daa	dii	duu	
	aad	iid	duu	
	zaa	aii	zuu	
	aaz	iiz	uuz	
	maa	mii	muu	
	aam	iim	uum	
1.17.	maaruuf	baanaat	Siiriin	piikaan
	jaaruub	zuuriin	naamuus	diiruus
	wiiraan	baaruun	naapiis	luumaak
	faanuus	naadaan	taamiir	biimaar
1.18.	iimaa	iimaan	baarii	baariik
	tuufaa	tuufaan	biimaa	biimaar
	piikaa	piikaan	naamuu	naamuus
	baanaa	baanaat	diiruu	diiruuz
	saalaa	saalaan	ruumaa	ruumaal
	suufaa	suufaar	jaaruu	jaaruub

2./p/; bilabial, unaspirated stop, voiceless.
/ph/; bilabial, aspirated stop, voiceless.

Listen to the following words; the first word in any given pair contains the unaspirated consonant, /p/, the second, the aspirated, /ph/; otherwise the words are identical. Listen carefully to the contrast in all the word-pairs.

1. pal phal 2. paal phaal
3. apaa aphaa 4. aapaa aaphaa
5. aapii aaphii 6. puuraa phuuraa
7. aap aaph 8. lup luph

2.1. /p/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

paa
pin
piit
paaruu
paapin
pisaa
pii
pul
piisaa
paakii
pinak
piilaa
puu
piin
piinaa
piipuu
puujaa
piis
pan
puut
puuraa
palii
pas
puus

2.2. /p/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

aapaa
rupii
kuupii
niipaa
paapii
apiil
maapaa
liipaa
nipaa
ziipuu
siipii
japii
lipii
juupaa
tuupuu
rumpaa
taapii
tapii
jupaa
miipaa

2.3. /p/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

aap
rap
fuup
tiip
palap
iip
suup
naap
niip
palip
juup
siip
ciip
muup
palup
taap
liip
zuup
lump
pulap

2.4. /ph/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

phal
phaal
phag
phinak
phuulii
phan
phiik
phaag
phulaan
phiikii
phun
phik
phiit
phuulaan
phaanii
phuul
phul
phur
phiikaa
phuusaa

2.5. /p/ and /ph/ contrasted intially. Repeat after the tape.

1. phan   pan   2. pal   phal
3. phaal   paal   4. puul   phuul
5. phiis   piis   6. piikaa   phiikaa
7. phis   pis   8. puus   phuus
9. phiinaa   piinaa   10. pul   phul

2.6. /ph/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

aphaar   uphaar   uuphaa   iiphaa
uphii   iiphuu   iphuu   siiphaa
naaphaa   juuphaa   juphaa   miiphii
ziiphuu   faaphii   tuuphuu   siiphii

2.7. /p/ and /ph/ contrasted medially. Repeat after the tape.

1. aaphaa   aapaa   2. uupaa   uuphaa
3. uphaar   upaar   4. liipii   liiphii
5. siiphuu   siipuu   6. japii   japhii
7. naaphaa   naapaa   8. tapii   taphii
9. ruuphuu   ruupuu   10. ziipaa   ziiphaa

2.8. /ph/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

uph   aph   iiph   uuph
raaph   tiiph   suuph   jaaph
kuuph   liiph   luuph   leph

2.9. /p/ and /ph/ contrasted finally. Repeat after the tape.

1. uph   up   2. iip   iiph
3. suuph   suup   4. aap   aaph
5. japh   jap   6. luup   luuph
7. tiiph   tiip   8. taap   taaph

2.10. /p/ /ph/, at random, in various positions. Repeat after the tape.

phal   paal   phuul   phaan
piilii   taaphii   ruupaa   siipii

2.10. Cont'd.

siiph
aphii
aphaar
jiipii
ziipii
tuup
uupar
taapii
muuphuu
suuphii
phuun
iiphuu
siip
miipuu
naapii
taapii
liipuu
riiphii
phuuk
paapin

3. /k/; velar, unaspirated stop, voiceless.
/kh/; velar, aspirated stop, voiceless.

Listen to the following words; the first word in any given pair begins with the unaspirated consonant, /k/, the second with the aspirated, /kh/; otherwise the words are identical. Listen to the contrast in all the word-pairs.

1. kal khal
2. kaal khaal
3. kin khin
4. kiin khiin
5. kul khul
6. kus khus
7. kaan khaan
8. kuut khuut

3.1. /k/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

kam
kuud
kiil
kamii
kiif
kaam
kiin
kulii
kaamii
kuufii
kiim
kaab
kilaa
kuuzaa
kiinaa
kaal
kaaj
kiimaa
kuuc
kin

3.2. /k/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

aakaa
naakaa
phaakaa
miikii
bikaa
uukaa
phiikaa
saakii
biikuu
nukii
ikaa
kuukaa
cuukii
faakuu
naakii
iikaa
uukii
buukaa
zuukii
cuukaa

3.3. /k/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

aak
phaak
maak
cuuk
uuk
fuuk
fiik
nik
ik
ziik
sak
bik
ak
naak
suuk
mak

3.4. /kh/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

kham khaam khuus khuS
khiid khin khas khom
khuun khiic khud khic
khaak khal khalii khulaa
khaalii khanii khuunii khulii

3.5. /k/ and /kh/ contrasted initially. Repeat after the tape.

1. khaa kaa 2. kaal khaal
3. khiil kiil 4. kal khal
5. khul kul 6. kulii khulii
7. khaalii kaalii 8. kisii khisii
9. khuun kuun 10. kudaa khudaa

3.6. /kh/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

aakhaa ekhaa uukhaa iikhaa
baakhaa muukhii miikhuu caakhii
raakhii muukhuu miikhii siikhii
sikhaa cakhii mukhii dikhii
dikhaa dikhaa sukhaa sukhaa

3.7. /k/ and /kh/ contrasted medially. Repeat after the tape.

1. siikhaa siikaa 2. suukii suukhii
3. sukhal sukal 4. mukhar mukar
5. nikhaal nikaal 6. akhiil akiil
7. cakhaa cakaa 8. aakhuun aakuun
9. muukhuu muukuu 10. mukhuu mukuu

3.8. /kh/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

suukh aakh iikh uukh
rukh dukh cakh siikh
sikh raakh diikh dikh
mukh luukh liikh likh
lakh laakh maakh makh

3.9. /k/ and /kh/ contrasted finally. Repeat after the tape.

1. siikh	siik	2. sik	sikh
3. raakh	raak	4. liik	liikh
5. duukh	duuk	6. cak	cakh
7. naakh	naak	8. laak	laakh
9. suukh	suuk	10. biik	biikh

3.10. /k/ and /kh/, at random, in various positions. Repeat after the tape.

khuul	kaal	siikh	sikhaa
siikhaa	liikaa	likh	raakh
phiik	naak	nakh	khaan
akhiil	aakiil	rakh	rakhii
laakh	khiil	kiilaa	caak
sukh	paak	kaakii	khaakii
khulaa	likhaa	phiikii	kuuk

4. /b/; bilabial, unaspirated stop, voiced.
/bh/; bilabial, aspirated stop, voiced.

Listen to the following words; the first word in any given pair contains the unaspirated consonant, /b/, the second, the aspirated, /bh/; otherwise the words are identical.

1. bal	bhal	2. baal	bhaal
3. biil	bhiil	4. buul	bhuul
5. aabii	aabhii	6. sabii	sabhii
7. nibii	nibhii	8. aab	aabh

Also listen to the following words; the first word in any given word-pair begins with /b/, the second, with /p/ (unaspirated p). Listen to the contrast carefully; notice that /p/ is unaspirated, and that the contrast between /b/ and /p/ initially is simply a matter of the presence or absence of voicing.

1. bil	pil	2. biil	piil
3. baal	paal	4. buun	puun
5. bul	pul	6. bam	pam

4.1. /b/: initially. Repeat after the tape.

baal biil buul biin
banii bilii bil bilaa
bul bulaa ban banaa
baanii buunii biinii biiz
baaguu buutaa biisii buusii

4.2. Initial /b/ and /p/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. baan paan 2. paal baal
3. bin pin 4. piinaa biinaa
5. buus puus 6. bunaa punaa
7. biit piit 8. pitaa bitaa
9. baat paat 10. piis biis

4.3. /b/: medially. Repeat after the tape.

aabaa uubii iibuu baabuu
nabii kaabuu saabuu biibii
tuubaa nibii laabii buubuu
aabii jabii zubii suubii
subuu suubii subaa suubaa

4.4. /b/ and /p/ contrasted medially. Repeat after the tape.

1. aabaa aapaa 2. uupal uubal
3. naabii naapii 4. siipii siibii
5. siibaa siipaa 6. baapuu baabuu
7. tuubaa tuupaa 8. napii nabii
9. sabar sapar 10. tapar tabar

4.5. /b/: finally. Repeat after the tape.

aab uub rab nib
jaab nuub ziib daab
gab gaab liib lab
kab kiib duub sub

4.6. Final /b/ and /p/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. aab aap 2. taap taab
3. duub duup 4. kap kab
5. baab baap 6. siip siib
7. luub luup 8. lap lab
9. hab hap 10. jiip jiib

4.7. /bh/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

bhaal bhii bhin bhuun
bhiie bhie bhuj bhuuj
bhaar bhiit bhuut bhun
bhiil bhalaa bhalii bhaaluu
bhunii bhuunii bhaat bhaataa

4.8. Initial /b/ and /bh/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. bhaal baal 2. biil bhiil
3. bhuul buul 4. baan bhaan
5. bhan ban 6. balaa bhalaa
7. bhuut buut 8. bunaa bhunaa
9. bhiis biis 10. bin bhin

4.9. Initial /b/, /bh/, /p/ and /ph/. Repeat after the tape.

1. baal bhaal phaal paal
2. bal bhal phal pal
3. bun bhun phun pun
4. biis bhiis phiis piis
5. buuj bhuuj phuuj puuj
6. biit bhiit phiit piit

4.10. /bh/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

aabhaa abhii gabhii kabhii
jiibhaa jibhaa gaabhuu aabhin
siibhii suubhuu duubhar iibhun
lubhii aabhuut nibhii naabhii

4.11. Medial /b/ and /bh/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. aabhaa aabaa 2. aabii aabhii
3. tuubhaa tuubaa 4. jiibii jiibhii

4.11. Cont'd.

5. jabhii	jabii	6. naabii	naabhii
7. nibhaa	nibaa	8. dabii	dabhii
9. sabhii	sabii	10. kabii	kabhii

4.12. Medial /b/, /bh/, /p/ and /ph/. Repeat after the tape.

1. aabaa	aabhaa	aaphaa	aapaa
2. iibuu	iibhuu	iiphuu	iipuu
3. kabii	kabhii	kaphii	kapii
4. siibii	siibhii	siiphii	siipii
5. luubuu	luubhuu	luuphuu	luupuu
6. luubaan	luubhaan	luuphaan	luupaan

4.13. /bh/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

laabh	luubh	liibh	duubh
diibh	jaabh	jiibh	juubh
naabh	niibh	nabh	nibh

4.14. Final /b/ and /bh/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. aabh	aab	2. uub	uubh
3. iibh	iib	4. jab	jabh
5. kuubh	kuub	6. jiib	jiibh

4.15. Final /b/, /bh/, /p/ and /ph/. Repeat after the tape.

1. aab	aabh	aaph	aap
2. tiib	tiibh	tiiph	tiip
3. suub	suubh	suuph	suup

4.16. /p/, /ph/, /b/ and /bh/ in various positions. Repeat after the tape.

uub	naap	sabhii	phiir
tabhii	phan	bhus	paas
sab	jaap	kaphii	kabhii
phan	bhaarii	bhinii	piinaa
luubh	sab	liip	jiib
baabuu	paapii	phupii	bhaat
nabii	japaa	abhii	phaaphaa

5. /g/; velar, unaspirated stop, voiced.
/gh/; velar, aspirated stop, voiced.

Listen to the following words. In any given word-pair, the first word contains the unaspirated consonant, /g/, the second, the aspirated, /gh/; otherwise the words are identical.

1. gaam ghaam 2. giit ghiit
3. gundaa ghumsaa 4. gar ghar
5. gis ghis 6. galaa ghalaa
7. gum ghum 8. gaal ghaal

Also listen to the following words; the first word in any given word-pair begins with /g/, the second, with /k/ (unaspirated K). Listen to the contrast carefully; notice that /k/ is unaspirated, and that the contrast between /g/ and /k/ in the initial positions is simply a matter of the presence or absence of voicing, respectively.

1. giit kiit 2. gul kul
3. gaanaa kaanaa 4. galii kalii
5. guudaa kuudaa 6. giilaa kiilaa

5.1. /g/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

gaal guuj giit gaam
gan gir gun gum
galaa giniii gunii gaalii
guujii gulaab giinaa giilii

5.2. Initial /g/ and /k/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. gal kal 2. kin gin
3. giit kiit 4. kaal gaal
5. guudaa kuudaa 6. kulii gulii
7. giil kiil 8. kul gul
9. galii kalii 10. kaakii gaagii

5.3. /g/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

nagaa	raagii	lagii	laagii
nagii	laagan	maagii	bhiigii
paagaa	paagal	niilgau	magan
nagar	saagir	taagaa	jaalbaz

5.4. Medial /g/ and /k/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1.	agar	akar	2.	bakal	bagal
3.	naagaa	naakaa	4.	jaakii	jaagii
5.	sugan	sukan	6.	kaakaa	kaagaa
7.	raagii	raakii	8.	sakan	sagan
9.	Sagun	Sakun	10.	fiikaa	fiigaa

5.5 /g/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

aag	saag	miig	juug
rog	jug	nag	nig
kiig	juug	naag	alag
siig	liig	suug	lag

5.6. Final /g/ and /k/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1.	raag	raak	2.	naak	naag
3.	rag	rak	4.	nik	nig
5.	alag	alak	6.	paak	paag
7.	suug	suuk	8.	niik	niig
9.	amiig	amiik	10.	amik	amig

5.7. /gh/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

ghii	ghaas	ghaas	ghis
ghum	ghin	ghar	ghaat
ghaam	ghuur	ghaas	ghiil
ghul	ghaan	ghiij	ghir
ghuub	ghuum	ghiis	ghal

5.8. Initial /g/ and /gh/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1.	ghaat	gaat	2.	gar	ghar
3.	ghin	gin	4.	giit	ghiit
5.	ghis	gis	6.	gun	ghun
7.	ghuur	guur	8.	gaanaa	ghaanaa
9.	ghuulii	guulii	10.	galii	ghalii

5.9. Initial /g/, /gh/, /k/ and /kh/. Repeat after the tape.

1.	gaanaa	ghaanaa	khaanaa	kaanaa
2.	guur	ghuur	khuur	kuur
3.	giit	ghiit	khiit	kiit
4.	galii	ghalii	khalii	kalii
5.	gilaa	ghilaa	khilaa	kilaa
6.	gulii	ghulii	khulii	kulii

5.10. /gh/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

aaghaa	lighii	uughuu	ughuu
aghii	maghuu	maaghii	jiighii
diighaa	siighaa	suughuu	sughii
aaghii	sighaa	liighuu	laghii

5.11. Medial /g/ and /gh/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1.	aaghaa	aagaa	2.	laagii	laaghii
3.	jaaghaa	jaagaa	4.	jagii	jaghii
5.	jaaghii	jaagii	6.	juguu	jughuu
7.	naghii	nagii	8.	miigaa	miighaa
9.	suughuu	suuguu	10.	siigii	siighii

5.12. Medial /g/, /gh/, /k/ and /kh/. Repeat after the tape.

1.	aagaa	aaghaa	aakhaa	aakaa
2.	laagii	laaghii	laakhii	laakii
3.	miiguu	miighuu	miikhuu	miikuu
4.	juuguu	juughuu	juukhuu	juukuu
5.	saagaa	saaghaa	saakhaa	saakaa
6.	naagii	naaghii	naakhii	naakii

5.13. /gh/; Finally. Repeat after the tape.

juugh	aagh	iigh	uugh
liigh	laagh	jiigh	naagh
saugh	muugh	miigh	mugh

5.14. Final /g/ and /gh/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1.	laagh	laagh	2.	jiig	jiigh
3.	duugh	duug	4.	naag	naagh
5.	miigh	miig	6.	raag	raagh

5.15. Final /g/, /gh/, /k/ and /kh/. Repeat after the tape.

1.	aag	aagh	aakh	aak
2.	luug	luugh	luukh	luuk
3.	jiig	jiigh	jiikh	jiik
4.	daag	daagh	daakh	daak

5.16. /k/, /kh/, /g/ and /gh/ in various positions. Repeat after the tape.

kiil
kolii
naak
naaghii
lungii
kiimaa
uukh

khiil
lagii
khaanaa
likhaa
khulii
ghunii
saag

giilaa
jaaguu
khuun
muukii
kiilii
ghulii
kiisaa

ghulii
laag
ghuun
naag
naagh
giilaa
lausaa

6. Retroflex and Dental Stops.

/t/; dental, unaspirated stop, voiceless.
/th/; dental, aspirated stop, voiceless.
/d/; dental, unaspirated stop, voiced.
/dh/; dental, aspirated stop, voiced.
/T/; retroflex, unaspirated stop, voiceless
/Th/; retroflex, aspirated stop, voiceless.
/D/; retroflex unaspirated stop, voiced

The dental stops are pronounced with the tip of the tongue touching against the back of the upper teeth. The upper surface of the tip of the tongue may touch the lower edges of the gums but never the alveolar ridge.

The retroflex stops are pronounced by drawing the tongue back and curling it so the under surface of the tip of the tongue touches the area just above the alveolar ridge. American students usually find it more difficult to recognize and pronounce the dental stops than the retroflex ones. In the beginning it might be useful to exaggerate a little bit by bringing the tongue quite forward while pronouncing the dentals, even to the extent of slipping it between the upper and the lower teeth.

Listen to the following words containing unaspirated dental and retroflex stops.

	1	2	3	4
1.	taal	daal	Taal	Daal
2.	Tiil	Diil	tiil	diil
3.	Duul	Tuul	duul	tuul
4.	dil	til	Dil	Til

Listen to the following words containing aspirated dental and retroflex stops.

	1	2	3	4
1.	thaal	dhaal	Thaal	Dhaal
2.	Thiil	Dhiil	thiil	dhiil
3.	Dhuul	Thuul	dhuul	thuul
4.	dhil	thil	Dhil	Thil

6.1. /t/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

taal tuul til tiil
taanaa tiinii tum tuus
taar tarii tinaa tanaa
tuuj taaj tiijaa tuusii
talaa taapii tuubaa tabhii

6.2. /d/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

daal duul dil diil
daanaa diinii dum duus
daar darii dinaa danaa
duuj daaj diijaa duusii
dalaa daapii duubaa dabhii

6.3. Initial /t/ and /d/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. taal daal 2. duub tuub
3. taanii daanii 4. dum tum
5. tanii danii 6. duur tuur
7. tan dan 8. diin tiin
9. talaa dalaa 10. duuj tuuj

6.4. /t/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

aataa kaatii giitaa gaatii
luutii siitaa saatii jiitii
siitaa maatuu khaatii jiituu
bhaatii ghaataa gaataa naatii
phiitaa fiitaa bhuutii juutaa

6.5. /d/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

aadii buudaa ziidii piidaa
suudaa fiidii fidaa nadii
sadaa zadii midaa bhiidii
judii giidii ghiiduu daadii
maadaa badii ridaa sadii

6.6. Medial /t/ and /d/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. aatii aadii 2. judaa jutaa
3. khaatii khaadii 4. ladaa lataa
5. maataa maadaa 6. nadii natii
7. bataa badaa 8. biidaa biitaa
9. satii sadii 10. suudii suutii

6.7. /t/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

laat baat jutt siit
bhuut ghuut saat ghaat
khiit kaat mat rut
jiit jit cit biit
khat but puut piit

6.8. /d/; finally. Repeat after the tpae.

baad laad suud bad
khad giid mad muud
khud sad daad zid
diid bhad ghad fid
buud niid muud miid

6.9. Final /t/ and /d/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. baat baad 2. juud juut
3. bhat bhad 4. buud buut
5. maat maad 6. suud suut
7. zit zid 8. fiid fiit
9. jiit jiid 10. khad khat

6.10. /th/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

thaa thaan thii thuuk
than thaam thaanii thiik
thuk thil tham thaam
thaal thiil thij thiin
thuub thap thus thum

6.11. Initial /t/ and /th/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. taan thaan 2. thiin tiin
3. tan than 4. thuuk tuuk
5. tum thum 6. thij tij
7. taal thaal 8. thiij tiij
9. tuuj thuuj 10. thil til

6.12. /dh/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

dhan dhaan dhin dhiin
dhun dhuul dhas dhuut
dhiit dhul dhaat dhiir
dhaar dhap dhiim dhuum
dhut dhuur dhaak dhak

6.13. Initial /d/ and /dh/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1.	daan	dhaan	2.	dhul	dul
3.	duut	dhuut	4.	dhaak	daak
5.	daar	dhaar	6.	dhiim	diim
7.	dam	dham	8.	dhaanii	daanii
9.	diimii	dhiimii	10.	dharii	darii

6.14. Initial /t/, /th/, /d/ and /dh/. Repeat after the tape.

1.	taan	thaan	dhaan	daan
2.	tiin	thiin	dhiin	diin
3.	tanii	thanii	dhanii	danii
4.	tuulii	thuulii	dhuulii	duulii
5.	tuum	thuum	dhuum	duum

6.15. /th/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

maathaa	laathii	kiithaa	duuthii
mathii	maathuu	saathii	miithuu
naathii	mathaan	gaathii	guthii
juuthaa	jathuu	kiithii	kothii

6.16. Medial /t/ and /th/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1.	aataa	aathaa	2.	mathii	matii
3.	juutaa	juuthaa	4.	liithii	liitii
5.	natii	nathii	6.	maathii	maatii
7.	suutuu	suuthuu	8.	jaathuu	jaatuu

6.17. /dh/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

aadhaa	aadhii	iidhii	adhii
uudhuu	udhaar	adhik	adhiin
siidhaa	sudhaar	siidhii	madhuu
madhur	gadhaa	sidhii	saadhuu

6.18. Medial /d/ and/dh/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1.	aadii	aadhii	2.	saadhaa	saadaa
3.	saaduu	saadhuu	4.	gadhaa	gadaa
5.	bidaa	bidhaa	6.	nidhaan	nidaan
7.	maaduu	maadhuu	8.	siidhii	siidii

6.19. Medial /t/, /th/, /d/ and /dh/. Repeat after the tape.

1.	aataa	aathaa	aadhaa	aadaa
2.	aatii	aathii	aadhii	aadii

6.19. Continued.

3. bitaa bithaa bidhaa bidaa
4. saatuu saathuu saadhuu saaduu
5. satii sathii sadhii sadii
6. nitaan nithaan nidhaan nidaan

6.20. /th/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

saath rath naath muuth
miith math guth luuth
liith maath paath kath
kuuth kiith giith buuth

6.21. Final /t̲/ and /th/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. maat maath 2. saath saat
3. mat math 4. raath raat
5. pat path 6. liith liit
7. juut juuth 8. guth gut

6.22. /dh/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

gidh siidh saadh muudh
badh kiidh naadh sudh
suudh luudh kaadh miidh
maadh mudh buudh guudh

6.23. Final /d̲/ and /dh/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. saad saadh 2. siidh siid
3. luud luudh 4. miidh miid
5. mad madh 6. aadh aad
7. suud suudh 8. sudh sud

6.24. Final /t̲/, /th/, /d/ and /dh/. Repeat after the tape.

1. saat saath saadh saad
2. suut suuth suudh suud
3. miit miith miidh miid
4. siit siith siidh siid

6.25. /t/, /th/, /d/ and /dh/ in various positions. Repeat after the tape.

1. taal dhiim baad maat
2. siidh saath kuud daad
3. tiilii dhulaa thaana biidii

6.25. Continued.

4. siidhaa maathaa thaamaa dhaarii
5. mathii nidaa naatii madhur
6. ghaat khaadii thaam tuulii
7. baadhaa nidaan judaa juutaa
8. buutaa siidhii dhaam thaan

7.1. /T/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

Taal Tiil Tuul Talii
Tiilaa Taasii Tikaa Tiikaa
Taakaa Takii Tuuk Taagaa
Tin Tiin Taap Tapak

7.2. /D/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

Daal Diil Dalii Duulii
Diis Dasii Daraa Daanii
Duum Dubii Daakuu Daak
Dapat Daakaa Daumii Diilii

7.3. Initial /t/, /d/, /T/ and /D/. Repeat after the tape.

1. taal Taal Daal daal
2. taan Taan Daan daan
3. tuul Tuul Duul duul
4. tal Tal Dal dal
5. tiir Tiir Diir diir
6. tanaa Tanaa Danaa danaa
7. tillaa Tillaa Dillaa dillaa

7.4. /T/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

aaTaa iiTaa aTii miiTaa
jaaTii kaaTii koTaa luTii
luuTaa ghaTaa phaTii ghaTii
bhaaTii miTii piTaa piiTii

7.5. /D/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

maaDaa laaDuu jaaDuu muuDaa
luuDaa khaDii miiDaa juuDii
biiDii suuDaa piiDaa riiDii

7.6. Medial /t/, /d/, /T/ and /D/. Repeat after the tape.

1. aataa   aaTaa   aaDaa   aadaa
2. latii   laTii   laDii   ladii
3. khaatii   khaaTii   khaaDii   khaadii
4. guutaa   guuTaa   guuDaa   guudaa
5. bataa   baTaa   baDaa   badaa
6. saatuu   saaTuu   saaDuu   saaduu

7.7. /T/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

laaT   baaT   biiT   naT
jaaT   kaaT   kuuT   juuT
khaT   bhaaT   phuuT   piiT
ghaaT   guuT   nikaT   bikuT

7.8. /D/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

laaD   khaD   miiD   suuD
kuuD   luuD   maD   ujaD
ruuD   juuD   unaD   asaD

7.9. Final /t/, /d/, /T/ and /D/. Repeat after the tape.

1. laat   laaT   laaD   laad
2. miit   miiT   miiD   miid
3. kuut   kuuT   kuuD   kuud
4. ujat   ujaT   ujaD   ujad
5. naat   naaT   naaD   naad
6. suut   suuT   suuD   suud

7.10. /Th/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

Thaam   Thiil   Thuun   Than
Thanii   Thilii   Thukii   Thuuk
Thasii   Thusii   Thuus   Thiis
Thiik   Thag   Thaap   Thagii

7.11. Initial /T/ and /Th/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. Tiil   Thiil   2. Thak   tak
3. Tuk   Thuk   4. Thiik   Tiik
5. Taalaa   Thaalaa   6. Thalii   Talii
7. Tas   Thas   8. Thanaa   Tanaa

7.12. /Dh/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

Dhaal	Dhaak	Dhiil	Dhul
Dhuuk	Dhakii	Dhaaluu	Dhulaa
Dhas	Dhiir	Dhaab	Dhab
Dhaaka	Dhuutii	Dhakaa	Dhik

7.13. Initial /D/ and /Dh/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. Daal	Dhaal	2. Dhak	Dak
3. Diil	Dhiil	4. Dhaak	Daak
5. Duur	Dhuur	6. Dhalii	Dalii
7. Dar	Dhar	8. Dhul	Dul
9. Daam	Dhaam	10. Dhuuk	Duuk

7.14. Initial /th/, /dh/, /Th/ and /Dh/. Repeat after the tape.

1. thaan	Thaan	Dhaan	dhaan
2. thiil	Thiil	Dhiil	dhiil
3. thiik	Thiik	Dhiik	dhiik
4. thakaa	Thakaa	Dhakaa	dhakaa
5. thaanaa	Thaanaa	Dhaanaa	dhaanaa

7.15. /Th/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

miiThaa	aThii	iiThii	aaThii
kaThii	laaThuu	kuuThii	laaThii
saThii	saaThii	miiTii	miThii

7.16. Medial /T/ and/Th/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape:

1. biiTii	biiThii	2. kaaThii	kaaTii
3. kaTin	kaThin	4. laaThuu	laaTuu
5. miiTaa	miiThaa	6. gaThaa	gaTaa
7. ruuTii	ruuThii	8. maThii	maTii

7.17. Medial /th/, /dh/, /Th/ and /Dh/. Repeat after the tape.

1. maathaa	maaThaa	maaDhaa	maadhaa
2. aathii	aaThii	aaDhii	aadhii
3. kathaa	kaThaa	kaDhaa	kadhaa
4. guthaa	guThaa	guDhaa	gudhaa
5. siithii	siiThii	siiDhii	sidhii

7.18. /Th/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

kaaTh	kuuTh	laaTh	maTh
gaaTh	kiiTh	miiTh	nuuTh
siiTh	jiiTh	jaaTh	saaTh
puuTh	buuTh	baaTh	biiTh

7.19. Final /T/ and /Th/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. laaT	laaTh	2. saaTh	saaT
3. siiT	siiTh	4. kuuTh	kuuT
5. niiT	niiTh	6. maTh	maT
7. maaT	maaTh	8. liiTh	liiT

7.20. Final /th/, /dh/, /Th/ and /Dh/. Repeat after the tape.

1. kiith	kiiTh	kiiDh	kiidh
2. siith	siiTh	siiDh	siidh
3. saath	saaTh	saaDh	saadh
4. math	maTh	maDh	madh
5. ruuth	ruuTh	ruuDh	ruudh

7.21. Dental and retroflex stops in various positions. Repeat after the tape.

thaan	dhaan	taan	Taan
Thiik	Dhaak	laaThii	kuuThaa
miiThii	maathaa	madhur	kidhar
khaatii	khaTii	ghaTaa	kooThii
maath	gidh	saadhan	dhaarii
dhiirii	thakii	Thaan	Dhakan
kaThin	bhaaT	kathaa	siidh
ghaaT	laaD	siiThii	bhaaTii
puuthii	piiTh	phaTii	DaaT
dhaat	dhiirii	saadhii	saathii
talaa	thaalii	Talii	dhalii
Dhiilaa	dhanak	Thanii	adhik

Long Vowels, /ee oo ai au/

8. /ee oo ai au/ are long vowels, i.e. for the prosodic and other purposes they are treated same as the long vowels, /aa ii uu/. These seven long vowels can be shown to be long in duration compared with their short counter parts, in cases where there are short counterparts, in the initial and medial positions. In the final position, however, only the long vowels occur in Urdu; consequently the contrast is often not as clearly maintained and the long vowels tend to get slurred in unstressed positions. That is to say that in individual words a speaker would pronounce a final long vowel long and clear, but in a sentence he might shorten it a little, especially if it occurs at the end of the sentence itself.

The important thing to remember, however, is to note that these long vowels are pronounced 'clear', i.e. they do not end in a glide, syllabic or non-syllabic like the similar vowels of English do. Thus if in Urdu you lengthen the duration of the vowel /ee/ it will still end in the same vowel as it began with, unlike English where the vowel will end in *i* glide of some kind. Listen to pronunciation of the following two words and compare it with your own pronunciation.

1. *rate*: /reeT/ as pronounced by an Urdu speaker
2. *rate*: /reeeeeeT/ as pronounced by an Urdu speaker.

Also listen to the following words and-make note of the length and the 'clarity' of these long vowels.

leetaa
boonaa
banoo
doo
khool

baiThaa
jeebii
hai
nau
khaul

baiThii
loobhii
lai
soom
jain

baunaa
ladee
lau
sair
dair

8.1. /ee; initially. Repeat after the tape

eek eeb een eeg
eel ees eet eed
eelii eenii eesii eefii
eerii eezii eezam eezaa

8.2. /ee/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

beel meez teel beed
keek keelaa kheetii meeraa
seer jeeTh bheed kheet
kheel pheer deesii deenaa
Dheer peeT seeTh bheej
kheenaa pheenii gheeraa seenaa

8.3. /ee/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

yee dee lee see
lagee banee khudee ghulee
maalee baalee ghumlee dhiimee
siidhee sadhee maree naSee
kaabee galee chiiree dhulee
calee caalee dharee dhaaree

8.4. Repeat after the tape.

1. yee baal 2. Daal lee 3. siidhee jaa
4. khaa lee 5. jaanee dee 6. dee dii
7. keelee lee 8. khaanee dee 9. yee keelee
10. meez thii 11. meezee thee 12. aanee waalee
13. eek seeb 14. eek seeb dee 15. yee eek seeb

8.5. /ai/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

aib ain aisii aisaa
aisee airee aibii ainak
ainii airaa aibak aisaa
ai aif aimak aifii

8.6. /ai/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

bail jain jainii baiThaa
sair fais faizii baizan
paidaa phail mail phailii
faiSan mailee thailaa dair
sairii kailaaS maidaan thailii
bairaa bhairii dainii Thairaa

8.7. /ai/; finally. Repeat after the tape,

ai jai hai lai
nai bai mai sai
gai rai khai phai
bhai Tai Thai dhai
dai cai Dhai kai

8.8. Repeat after the tape.

1. yee bail
2. bail hai
3. baiThee
4. bail baiThee
5. seeb hai
6. thailii hai
7. eek maidaan
8. eek seeb hai
9. yee jain hai
10. thailaa hai
11. yee thailaa hai
12. mai dee
13. paidaa hai
14. maidaan thee
15. bail baiThaa

8.9. Repeat after the tape.

1. yee reet hai
2. yee maidaan hai
3. yee seeb hai
4. bail baiThee thee
5. bail baiThaa hai
6. thailaa kis-ka hai
7. thailaa meeraa hai
8. yee bail hai
9. eek bail baithaa hai
10. yee jain-kii ainak hai

8.10. /oo/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

oos ool oolaa oonee
ook oobii oogun ooghaT
ooz ooraa ookh oofan
oog ooTaa ootaa oodhii

8.11. /oo/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

bool mool khool nooj
soon soonaa roonaa boorii
bhoor ghoolii goolaa thook

8.11. Continued.

toolaa namool saDool aamooz
bhoolii khoolee ghoolee dhoonaa
Thookaa Tookii Toopii thoopaa

8.12. /oo/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

oo loo boo dhoo
khoo caloo rakhoo siikhoo
ghooloo saadhoo baanoo banoo
thaamoo Thairoo baiThoo miloo
paaloo zaadoo bikoo bakoo

8.13. Repeat after the tape.

1. good loo   2. rook doo   3. seeb doo
4. neek banoo   5. gool hai   6. gool hoo
7. Seer hoo   8. baanoo hai   9. mat bakoo
10. deekh loo   11. roonee doo   12. Toopii doo
13. doo dhoobii   14. roonaa dhoonaa   15. doo goolee

8.14. /au/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

auj aurat aunee aus
aum aumii aulii aur
aubii aubak ausaan autaar
augun audhiin autiin auzaar

8.15. /au/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

baur paul maun bauraa
maulaa nauzaa fauzii fauj
nauj naujii maujuu maujuud
rauzan khaulan dhaun gaunas
faujii [illegible] khaul gaudh
kaumii saudaa jauzii zaujaa

8.16. /au/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

au jau lau zau
nau rau bau khau
ghau gau mau sau
pau tau Tau Thau

8.17. Repeat after the tape.

1. paudaa hai　2. baunii thii　3. saudaa hoo
4. faujii hoo　5. zaujaa hai　6. maujuud hai
7. gaunaa hoonaa　8. jau-kaa paudaa　9. khaulan hoonaa
10. taubaa hai　11. maujuud hoo　12. kaun hai
13. autaar hai　14. auzaar hoo　15. baunee hoo

8.18. Repeat after the tape.

1. kaun maujuud hai　2. sau baunee thee
3. us-koo saudaa hai　4. yee jau-kaa paudaa hai
5. kaun khooleegaa　6. kaun booleegaa
7. kaun sooceegaa　8. meeree auzaar thee
9. fauj-kee ausaan　10. kaun kheeleegaa
11. maut-kee aagee　12. maulaa maujuud thaa
13. yee too maulaa hai　14. doo auzaar thee

Nasalized Vowels

9. In Urdu all vowels can occur either nasalized or unnasalized. So far we discussed only the latter; in the following exercises we practice to differentiate between the nasalized and unnasalized vowels. This distinction is extremely important in Urdu; there are innumberable words in which two different meanings are entirely dependent on maintaining this distinction. Though short vowels also occur nasalized, it is mostly the long vowels which carry nasalization. In pronouncing these nasalized vowels the nasal passage is kept open in the throat so that part of the expelled breath goes through it. This nasalization is part of the vowel and does not depend upon the following or the preceding consonant. Listen to following word-pairs; in each instance the first word contains a nasalized vowel, and the second word, an unnasalized one. Note that only the vowel is nasalized and that it does not end in either m or n or any other nasal consonant. (Nasalization is indicated in the transcription by the symbol, ~, called tilde, written over the vowel symbols.)

1. jãã	jaa	2. bãã	baa
3. hãĩ	hai	4. bãĩ	tai
5. lõõ	loo	6. dĩĩ	dii
7. lẽẽ	lee	8. sõõ	soo
9. dẽẽ	dee	10. jũũ	juu
11. lẽẽgii	leegii	12. hootĩĩ	hootii
14. tããgaa	taagaa	15. mããgaa	maagaa

9.1. Repeat after the tape.

dãã	jãã	jũũ	hãĩ
khũũ	lẽẽ	lĩĩ	dhõõ
thĩĩ	hõõ	hũũ	dẽẽ
sõõ	zĩĩ	kãã	kĩĩ
fũũ	zẽẽ	jõõ	ghãã
dhĩĩ	Thõõ	Tẽẽ	bhĩĩ

9.2. Nasalized and unnasalized vowels contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. dee dẽẽ 2. lõõ loo
3. haa hãã 4. hãĩ hai
5. dhii dhĩĩ 6. bhĩĩ ghii
7. bhoo bhõõ 8. dhãã dhaa
9. see sẽẽ 10. sũũ suu

9.3. Repeat after the tape.

dhãs bhãĩs sããs dhããs
lũũgaa dẽẽgoo dũũgii dẽẽgii
cããdii tããbaa hãsaa dããt
sẽẽdur pẽẽdii bããbii bhããraa
jããcaa tããgaa Tããkii dhãsii

9.4. Nasalized and unnasalized vowels contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. phaas phããs 2. sããdaa saudaa
3. gaajaa gããjaa 4. kẽẽdii koodii
5. luugii lũũgii 6. lõõgee loogee
7. siidii sĩĩdii 8. hãsii hasii
9. caadii cããdii 10. tããgaa taagaa
11. duudal dũũdal 12. gẽẽdii geedii

9.5. Repeat after the tape.

ããcal ããgan ĩĩT ũũT
ĩĩTaa ẽẽcaa ããdhaa ããdhii
ĩĩsĩĩ ããsuu ããdhii õõsuu
ĩĩcaa ẽẽgii õõjuu ũũcaa

9.6. Nasalized and unnasalized vowels contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. aadhii ããdhii 2. ũũcaa uucaa
3. oosuu õõsuu 4. ããgan aagan
5. iicaa ĩĩcaa 6. ẽẽdii eedii
7. uujuu ũũjuu 8. ããkuu aakuu

9.7. Repeat after the tape.

ããcal	mããgii	kããdaa	sããcaa
khĩĩcii	pẽẽdii	ghãĩs	phããs
hũũgaa	lagũũ	jatĩĩ	boolũũ
ããgan	thĩĩ	bããdhaa	sõõcaa
ũũcaa	tããbaa	bhããraa	sẽẽdur

9.8. Nasalized and unnasalized vowels contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

ããcal	jããcii	juutaa	bhuusaa
kaisii	kãĩcii	paidaa	pẽẽdii
saas	sããs	hũũ	thii
thĩĩ	thee	mẽẽ	lagẽẽ
lagii	lagũũ	dũũgii	ghãĩs
bhees	hããsee	jããcee	naacii
bheedii	sõõdur	banii	lagĩĩ
ããsuu	aasaa	rẽẽgii	retii
hai	haĩ	gaatĩĩ	jaatĩĩ
bããdhii	laadii	kããdaa	saudaa

10. /c/, ch, j, jh/: As mentioned earlier these are not palatal stops but rather palatal affricates, through pronounced with much less friction than the English affricates. They can be voiced or unvoiced, and aspirated or unaspirated. In pronouncing these sounds the front part of the tongue is well spread while touching the region just above the upper teeth. Unlike in English the tongue is not narrowed to a point, nor are the lips slightly rounded; the tongue makes a wider contact, and the lips remain in neutral position.

Listen to the following words.

1.	caar	coor	bacaa	biic
2.	chat	chee	bichii	riich
3.	jiit	jaal	bajii	biij
4.	jhaT	jhuuT	bujhaa	boojh

10.1. /c/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

caar	ciil	cuur	coor
cain	calii	cuun	ciin
ciinii	cuunii	cunaa	coorii
caudaa	coon	coelaa	cait
ciT	cõõc	cuusii	cããdii

10.2. /dh/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

chat	choe	chuunaa	choolee
churii	chiin	chaTaa	chinii
chailaa	chooTee	chupii	cheed
chĩĩTaa	chĩĩk	chuuTee	chiinoo
chabii	chããTaa	chiilii	chaatii

10.3. Initial /c/ and /ch/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1.	coor	choor	2.	chuunaa	cuunaa
3.	cããTaa	chããTaa	4.	chab	cab
5.	cup	chup	6.	chaTii	caTii
7.	cainii	chainii	8.	chaal	caal
9.	caTak	chaTak	10.	chiinii	ciinii

10.4. /c/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

bacaa	sããcaa	naacii	macii
jããcii	jããcee	liicii	racii
mucii	noocii	acaar	acaanak
ghõõcuu	zacaa	macee	boecee

10.5. /ch/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

bichii	baachẽẽ	piichee	piichaa
kachuu	kaachii	saachii	puuchoo
puuchii	puuchoe	bichaa	bichee
tiichuu	piichuu	riichee	biichuu

10.6. Medial /c/ and /ch/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1.	bacii	bichii	2.	kaachii	naacii
3.	boecoo	puuchoo	4.	riichaa	niicaa
5.	mucii	bichii	6.	bichee	mucee
7.	liicii	puuchii	8.	baachẽẽ	naacẽẽ

10.7. /c/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

biic naac muuc sac
bac niic nuc jããc
pããc booc sooc looc
bhuc ããc kooc kuuc

10.8. /ch/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

kuch riich bich puuch
kaach mũũch ruch peech
nooch pach kiich gooch

10.9. Final /c/ and /ch/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. muc kuch 2. piich piic
3. kuuc puuch 4. riich niic
5. muuc mũũch 6. bich mic
7. peec peech 8. nooch nooc

10.10. /j/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

jaal jai jeel joor
jaan jiit jaTii jaTaa
juuT judaa jain jaur
jaalii jaisaa jaun jããc

10.11. /jh/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

jhaT jhuuT jhak jhiil
jheel jhun jhool jhõõkaa
jhukii jhukeo jhuum jhuumoo
jhaabaa jhoolee jheelii jhĩĩkoe
jhõõp jhukaan jhẽẽp jhuuTan

10.12. Initial /j/ and/jh/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. juuT jhuuT 2. jhaT jaT
3. jeel jheel 4. jhuum juum
5. jaal jhaal 6. jhiil jiil
7. jaanii jhaanii 8. jhukaa judaa
9. jaac jhaak 10. jhoolaa joolaa

10.13. /j/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

baajaa kaajuu baajee baajii
suujii sajaa bajii lajaa
paajii faujii maujii maujuu
maujuud saajid kaajal raajee

10.14. /jh/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

gaajhaa bujhii saajhaa saajhii
bujhee boojhal mujhee liijhuu
mããjhii mããjhaa boojhaa saajhee
bujhoo mujhii liijhii maujhii

10.15. Medial /j/ and /jh/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. baajaa baajhaa 2. saajhii saajii
3. bajii bujhii 4. maujhii maujii
5. boojaa boojhaa 6. mujhee bajee
7. mããjaa mããjhaa 8. liijhuu liijuu
9. paajii paajhii 10. suujhii suujii
11. nijii bujhii 12. mujhii faujii

10.16. /j/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

nauj fauj biij laaj
mauj suuj suuraj seej
taaj taaraaj anaaj faalij
khooj bheej ilaaj bhooj

10.17. /jh; finally. Repeat after the tape.

boojh riijh sããjh mujh
suujh buujh bããjh gajh
tujh oojh liijh meejh

10.18. Final /j/ and /jh/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. suuj suujh 2. sããjh saaj
3. nij tujh 4. mujh aaj
5. liij liijh 6. boojh bhooj
7. khooj oojh 8. riijh biij
9. fauj buujh 10. gajh suuraj

10.19. /c/, /ch/, /j/ and /jh/ in various positions. Repeat after the tape.

juutaa	jhuuT	cooTii	chooTaa
kuch	mujh	anaaj	faalij
biic	niic	mauj	riich
puuch	puuj	buujh	jhaT
chat	coorii	churaa	chiin
ciin	bacco	suujhii	kaajuu
bichee	puuchee	boojhal	saajhii
sooc	gããjaa	rããjhaa	rããcii

10.20. Repeat after the tape.

1. caar juutee
2. pããc saajhii
3. chooTaa boojh
4. yee caar seeb hãĩ
5. jhuuTee saathii
6. chooTii chat
7. yee chooTii chat hai
8. anaaj doo
9. mujhee anaaj doo
10. kuch puuchoo
11. un-see kuch puuchoo
12. juutee beecee
13. choolee chiinee
14. jeel jheelii
15. us-nee jeel jheelii
16. bhaarii boojh
17. yee bhaarii boojh hai
18. mujhee chooTee phal doo

11. /q/: uvular stop, voiceless. In pronouncing the consonant the tongue is drawn back to make a closure against the uvula. Listen to the following word-paris; the first word contains /q/, and the second, /k/ or /kh/.

1.	qaul	kaul	2.	qiimat	kiinaa
3.	baaqii	paakii	4.	qiimaa	kiisaa
5.	saaqii	Saakii	6.	diq	dikh
7.	qaum	khaul	8.	zauq	cauk

11.1. /q/; initially.

qaal qaum qaid qais
qaicii qaidii qazaa qaazii
qat qad qabaa qadiir
qaab qaatil qulii qiimaa
qiimat qamiiz qaadir qaul

11.2. Initial /q/ and /k/ and /g/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1.	qiimaa	kiinaa	2.	gil[illegible]	qiimat
3.	qaal	kaal	4.	gaal	qaab
5.	qadiir	kasiir	6.	galiin	qamiiz
7.	qul	gul	8.	kaamil	qaatil
9.	qais	gais	10.	kaaS	qaaS

11.3. /q/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

baaqii saaqii Sauqiin naqaab
Saqii taqii zaqii muqaam
maqaam aaqil naqal faaqaa
caaquu faqiir baqar baaqar
laqaa raqiib naqiib saaqin

11.4. Medial /q/ and /k/ and /g/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1.	saaqii	Saakii	2.	sagaa	laqaa
3.	naqaab	lagaam	4.	lakiir	faqiir
5.	mauqaa	caukaa	6.	naagaa	faaqaa

11.4. Continued.

7.	saaqi	leekin	8. saagar	baaqar
9.	naqiib	nagiin	10. Daakuu	caaquu
11.	naqal	nikal	12. lagii	taqii

11.5. /q/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

tauq	diq	Sauq	caaq
Safaq	alaq	daqiiq	raqiiq
taariq	Saariq	faaq	fauq
fiiq	faq	muq	anuq

11.6. Final /q/ and /k/ and /g/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1. caaq	caak	2. naag	laaq
3. alaq	falak	4. alag	faq
5. Sauq	cauk	6. loog	fooq
7. taariq	maalik	8. reeg	reeq
9. faaq	saag	10. Dig	diq
11. daqiiq	rakiik	12. taug	tauq

11.7. Repeat after the tape.

qaatil	baaqii	saaqii	Saq
mauqaa	qaum	alaq	maqaam
faaqaa	qaab	baqaa	raqiib
qalam	qasam	saqiil	naqaab
taariq	naqal	Sauqiin	qaazii
qaabil	qabiilaa	qataar	faqiir
naaqil	caaquu	daqiiq	diq

11.8. Repeat after the tape.

1. yee qalam hai
2. yee qalam thaa
3. pããc qalam
4. qaum-kii qasam
5. daqiiq baat
6. qabiilee-kee loog
7. kalaam-kee qaabil
8. faqiir-kaa maqaam
9. meeraa caaquu
10. caaquu mujhee doo
11. qataar-mẽẽ baiThoo
12. qãĩcii doo
13. mujhee qãĩcii doo
14. saqiil khaanee
15. mauqaa aur maqaam
16. agar mauqaa hoo

12. /x/; voiceless, velar fricative.
/G/; voiced, velar fricative.

Listen to the following words.

xaas xaat xud xuS
aaxir saxii Saax meex

Gaar Gaib Gul Gaur
aaGaa baGal baaG daaG

12.1. /x/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

xat xud xaas xaam
xataa xaatir xudii xuSii
xiiS xeemaa xaamooS xaak
xaar xaan xuunii xuun

12.2. Initial /x/ contrasted with /k/. Repeat after the tape.

1. xaam kaam 2. kaan xaan
3. xataa kataa 4. kiiS xiiS
5. xaak kaak 6. kuud xud

Contrasted with /kh/. Repeat after the tape.

1. xaan khaan 2. khair xair
3. xood khood 4. kham xam
5. xaarii khaarii 6. khaataa xataa

Contrasted with /q/. Repeat after the tape.

1. xaamat qaamat 2. qaar xaar
3. xat qat 4. qiimaa xiimaa
5. xalaa qalaa 6. qaatil xaatir

12.3. /x/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

aaxir axiir saxii Seexii
saxaa suxan Sooxii buxaar
Saaxaa naaxuS muxil baxiil
duxaan zaxiir taxiil muxuul

12.4. Medial /x/ contrasted with /k/. Repeat after the tape.

1.	aaxir	Saakir	2.	sakaa	saxaa
3.	buxaar	pukaar	4.	neekii	meexii
5.	baxiil	wakiil	6.	dukaan	duxaan

Contrasted with /kh/. Repeat after the tape.

1.	saxii	sakhii	2.	sakhaa	saxaa
3.	buxaar	bakhaan	4.	Seekhii	Seexii
5.	muxil	mukhil	6.	paakhaa	paaxaa

Contrasted with /q/. Repeat after the tape.

1.	aaxir	aaqil	2.	Saqii	saxii
3.	buxaar	wiqaar	4.	aqiil	axiir
5.	zaxiir	haqiir	6.	Sauqiin	Sooxii

12.5. /x/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

Saax	meex	rux	ciix
Saix	Soox	nax	biix
siix	faraax	doozax	wazix

12.6. Final /x/ contrasted with /k/. Repeat after the tape.

1.	naax	naak	2.	ruk	rux
3.	ciix	cik	4.	siik	siix
5.	mmx	neek	6.	Sook	Soox

Contrasted with /kh/. Repeat after the tape.

1.	siix	siikh	2.	rakh	rux
3.	cax	cakh	4.	suukh	suux
5.	Saax	saakh	6.	raakh	raax

Contrasted with /q/. Repeat after the tape.

1.	suux	suuq	2.	Sauq	Soox
3.	faraax	firaaq	4.	caq	cax
5.	rux	diq	6.	taariq	taariix

13.1. /G/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

Gaar Gul Gair Gam
Gaalib Galat Ganii Gazab
Gaasib Guruur Gaur Gool
Gariib Gairat Gadar Gaazii
Gaiz Gaus Gamii GaS

13.2. Initial /G/ contrasted with /q/. Repeat after the tape.

1. Gazab qasam 2. qul Gul
3. Gool qaul 4. qasam Gazab
5. Gariib qariib 6. qaatil Gaafil

Contrasted with /g/. Repeat after the tape.

1. Gul gul 2. Gam gum
3. Ganii ginii 4. gazak Gazab
5. Gair gais 6. gool Gool

Contrasted with /x/. Repeat after the tape.

1. Gam xam 2. xaal Gaar
3. Gool xool 4. xaatir Gaafil
5. Ganii xamii 6. xaar Gaar

13.3. /G/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

aaGaa baaGii baGal daGaa
siiGaa zaiGam saGiir raaGib
waGaa laGar paiGaam aaGaaz

13.4. Medial /G/ contrasted with /q/. Repeat after the tape.

1. aaGaa aaqaa 2. naqal baGal
3. saGiir faqiir 4. baaqar saaGar
5. daGaa baqaa 6. baaqii baaGii

Contrasted with /g/. Repeat after the tape.

1. aaGaa taagaa 2. nigal baGal
3. saaGar saagar 4. gaagar laaGar
5. daGaa jagaa 6. baigan zaiGam

Contrasted with /x/. Repeat after the tape.

1. saGiir buxiil 2. saxaa daGaa
3. daaGii Saaxii 4. muxil baGal
5. saaGar aaxir 6. ciixaa siiGaa

13.5. /G/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

baaG daaG dariiG faariG
teeG suraaG curaG darooG
zaaG deeG samaG farooG

13.6. Final /G/ contrasted with /q/. Repeat after the tape.

1. baaG taaq 2. taariq faariG
3. curaG faraq 4. caaq daaG
5. dariiG fariiq 6. samaq samaG

Contrasted with /g/. Repeat after the tape.

1. teeG doog 2. loog darooG
3. daaG naag 4. jaag baaG
5. curaG alag 6. aliig dariiG

Contrasted with /x/. Repeat after the tape.

1. tooG meex 2. Saax baaG
3. faariG taariix 4. faraax suraaG
5. zaaG naax 6. samax samaG

13.7. Repeat after the tape.

1. baaqii koolee 2. daaGii koolaa
3. taariixii kitaab 4. qariib qariib
5. ye baaG hai 6. Sauqiin loog
7. Gariib-kaa ghar 8. miix-kii nook
9. us-kii naqal 10. us-kii xaatir
11. aaGaa saahab 12. Seex-jii aaee
13. puliis-kii daarooGaa 14. makaan-kii qariib
15. woo xauf-see ciixaa 16. Gaar-kee qariib

14. /r/ is voiced and is pronounced with two or more quick taps of the tip of the tongue against the edge of the teeth ridge. American students often find it difficult to distinguish from /l/, especially in the inter-vocalic position.

/l/ is a voiced lateral sound, pronounced with the tip of the tongue against the teeth ridge. It is not so much affected by the environment as the English l, and is pronounced 'clear' even after back vowels in the final position.

Listen to the following words.

raat	reet	rooz	riit
ruk	rakh	ris	ruud
aaraam	aurat	arab	iram
miirii	miraaq	mariiz	baaruud
daar	deer	duur	daur
dair	dar	dur	gir
laat	luu	loobaan	liid
falak	baalak	maalik	caalaak
gul	bil	siil	tuul

14.1. /r/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

raat	rooz	ruum	rain
reet	riich	rag	ras
rut	ruk	raanaa	roonaa
raab	roog	roogii	rootii
raatib	rooTii	rããdaa	rããgaa
raT	raqiib	riijhaa	ruusii

14.2. /l/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

luu	loo	laat	laaT
lii	lab	laaD	laad
laam	liid	laakh	likh
liikh	luT	luuT	laanat

14.3. Initial /r/ and /l/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1.	laat	raat	2.	rab	lab
3.	looTii	rooTii	4.	rooT	looT
5.	laakh	raakh	6.	rakh	lakh
7.	laag	raag	8.	raT	laT
9.	looTaa	rooTaa	10.	raanaa	laanaa
11.	ladii	radii	12.	raam	laam
13.	loonii	roonii	14.	raaj	laaj

14.4. /r/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

aaraa	aarii	narii	darii
duurii	miirii	jooruu	Suruu
Siiraa	baariS	baariik	baaruud
suurat	Saram	zarab	giirii
bhaarii	baarii	pheeraa	dhaarii
kairii	kaarii	khaarii	kharii
bharii	faurii	zoor66	caar66
dharii	jaarii	geeruu	girii

14.5. /l/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

baalaa	balii	millii	suulii
bhaaluu	naalii	Dhiilaa	giilii
Dhalii	muulii	baaluu	bilak
maalik	jhalak	caalaak	alag
paalak	aaluu	booloo	miloo

14.6. Medial /r/ and /l/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1.	aalaa	aaraa	2.	baarii	baalii
2.	bhaalii	bhaarii	4.	narak	alag
5.	maalii	maarii	6.	seerii	seelii
7.	bhalii	bharii	8.	giirii	giilii
9.	maaliS	baariS	10.	koorii	koolii
11.	khalii	kharii	12.	baaruud	mauluud
13.	alif	aarif	14.	eeraaf	eelaan

14.7. /r/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

caar	maar	moor	suur
deer	daar	duur	daur
mar	sar	gir	dur
maadar	naadir	lakiir	amiir
umuur	umar	iisaar	asar
magar	saaGar	saadir	pidar
caadar	maazuur	qaadir	pair

14.8. /l/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

caal	maal	mool	saal
mil	gul	dhuul	bool
miil	cul	usuul	aadil
baadal	cuul	khul	khaul
khil	khiil	ubal	uchal
aamil	asiil	khool	ghool

14.9. Final /r/ and /l/ contrasted. Repeat after the tape.

1.	caal	caar	2.	cuur	cuul
3.	asiil	asiir	4.	khur	khul
5.	khiil	khiir	6.	gar	gal
7.	baadal	maadar	8.	aamir	aamil
9.	nigal	agar	10.	moor	mool
11.	mal	mar	12.	maar	maal
13.	usuul	umuur	14.	iisaar	iisaal

14.10. Repeat after the tape.

1. yee caar keelee
2. woo Gariib loog
3. agar calee too
4. nikaal laaoo
5. baadal ghiree
6. gheeraa Daalaa
7. caalaak coor
8. giilii baaruud
9. bhaarii maal
10. dar khulee
11. mailii caadar
12. saaree keelee
13. caarõõ keelõõ-koo
14. muulii gaajar
15. maaroo maaroo
16. zoor-kii baariS
17. darii xariidoo

15. /R/; voiced, retroflex flap, unaspirated.
/Rh/; voiced, retroflex flap, aspirated.

In pronouncing these consonants the tongue is curled back into the retroflex position, but then, instead of a sustained closure, it is flicked forward in a quick flap. These two consonants ~~do not occur~~ initially in Urdu. In the medial and final position one must try to distinguish these from /l/. Listen to the following words.

aRaa aaRaa paRii baRii
laR guR taaR bhiiR

gaaRhaa gaRhii baRhee paRhii
caRh kooRh gaRh daaRh

15.1. /R/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

aaRuu paRii baRee baRii
kaRee kaRii baRaa taaRii
saaRii siRii gaRii laRee
laRuu jaRaa jaaRee jaaRoo
taRap jhaRap saRak dhaRak
kiiRaa mooRoo muRaa muRee
uRaan ghaRii khaRaa khaRee

15.2. Medial /R/ contrasted with /l/. Repeat after the tape.

1. aaRaa aalaa 2. gaalii gaaRii
3. saaRii saalii 4. silii seRii
5. aaRuu aaluu 6. balaa baRaa
7. gaRii galii 8. galee gaRee
9. taaRii taalii 10. talab taRap
11. saRak sulag 12. jaalaa jaaRaa
13. jaRii jalii 14. ghoolaa ghooRaa

Contrasted with /r/. Repeat after the tape.

1. aaRaa aaraa 2. garii gaRii
3. taRap taras 4. taarii taarii
5. beeRii beerii 6. peeraa peeRaa
7. paRii parii 8. paree paRee
9. baaRii baarii 10. barii baRii
11. baRaa baraa 12. moorii moorii
13. saaRii saarii 14. sarii saRii

15.3. /Rh/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

paRhii paRhoo paRhee paRhaa
paRhee baRhii baRhoo baRhaa
siiRhii gaaRhii gaRhii kooRhii
kaRhee kuRhii caRhii caRhee
gaaRhaa TeeRhii TeeRhaa paRhaanaa
caRhaanaa baRhaanaa saaRhee aaRhat

15.4. Medial /Rh/ contrasted with /R/. Repeat after the tape.

1. gaRii gaRhii 2. kaRhee kaRee
3. mooRaa mooRhaa 4. paRhii paRii
5. paRee paRhee 6. paRhaa paRaa
7. baRee baRhee 8. baRhii baRii
9. baRoo baRhoo 10. siiRhii siRii
11. gaaRaa gaaRhaa 12. gaaRhee gaaRee

15.5. /R/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

ciiR aaR uR taaR
saR muR mooR laR
phaaR bhaaR gaaR guR
kuubaR ujaR akaR eekaR
baaR bhiiR peeR dauR
ujaaR ukhaaR bheeR phooR

15.6. Final /R/ contrasted with /l/. Repeat after the tape.

1. ciiR ciil 2. gaal gaaR
3. guR gul 4. taal taaR
5. baR bal 6. mul muR
7. bhiir bhiil 8. sal saR
9. peeR peel 10. mool mooR
11. jaR jal 12. nikal akaR

Contrasted with /r/. Repeat after the tape.

1. ciiR ciir 2. bar baR
3. tooR toor 4. gur guR
5. baaR baar 6. moor mooR
7. ujaR agar 8. pukaar ujaaR
9. peeR beer 10. biir bhiiR
11. ukhaaR ubhaar 12. naukar eckaR

15.7. /Rh/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

caRh ooRh gaRh meeRh
kooRh baaRh ciRh daaRh
sããRh sũũRh kuRh kaaRh

15.8. Final /Rh/ contrasted with /R/. Repeat after the tape.

1. jaR caRh 2. kooRh tooR
3. baaR baaRh 4. kuRh juR
5. mooR ooRh 6. ciRh ciiR
7. peeR meeRh 8. gaRh gaR

15.9. Repeat after the tape.

1. baRaa ghar 2. baRee buuRhee
3. caar peeR 4. baRii bhiiR
5. kaalaa ghooRa 6. niilii gaaRii
7. aagee baRhoo 8. siiRhii girii
9. meerii saaRii 10. taaR-kaa peeR
11. yee taaR-kaa peeR hai 12. baRaa jaaRaa
13. baRaa jaaRaa hai 14. baaRh-kaa Dar
15. baaRh-kaa Dar hai 16. puraanii saRak
17. puraanii saRak-kee kinaaree

16. /w/; voiced, labio-dental fricative, lenis. It is not aspirated like the English v. Also, unlike English, it does not occur finally.

/y/; voiced, frictionless, palatal continuant, unaspirated. In pronouncing /y/ the whole front part of the tongue is pressed against the alveolar ridge; however, there is little or no friction which makes it differ from the voiced, palatal fricative /ž/.

Listen to the following words.

waar waalii waalii walii
nawaa aawee raawii naawaa

yaar yaas yuunus yoorap
aayaa gayaa nayaa booyaa

16.1. /w/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

waar waadaa waalii walii
waapas waadii wiiraan walsii
waisaa wehää waziir wakiil
waasif wiimuu waaqaa wicaar
woo wää waalaa wafaa

;6/2/ /w/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

baawaa hawaa raawii daawaa
daawii dawaa nawaa jaawaa
kawii qawii zawaal jawaab
awaam qiwaam rawaaj tawan

16.3. /y/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

yaar yaas yaad yaab
yuunus yaaquut yee yää
yaarii yoorap yaajuuj yaabii
yëë yohää yää ya

16.1. /w/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

waar
waapas
waisaa
waasif
woo

waadaa
waadii
wahãã
wiimuu
wãã

waalii
wiiraan
waziir
waacaa
waalaa

walii
waisii
wakiil
wicaar
wafaa

16.2. /w/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

baawaa
daawii
kawii
awaam

hawaa
dawaa
qawii
qiwaam

raawii
nawaa
sawaal
rawaaj

daawaa
jaawaa
jawaab
tawaa

16.3. /y/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

yaar
yuunus
yaarii
yẽẽ

yaas
yaaquut
yoorap
yahãã

yaad
yee
yaajuuj
yãã

yaab
yũũ
yaabii
yaa

16.4. /y/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

aayaa
bayaa
taayaa
piyaa

gayaa
naayaa
riyaa
naayuub

nayaa
maayuus
liyaa
naayaab

saayaa
booyaa
diyaa
saayaa

17. /h/; voiced, glottal fricative, lenis.

Urdu /h/ is voiced initially and inter-vocalically; medially before a voiceless consonant and finally it is slightly devoiced. In the latter two positions it sounds similar to the English h, which is always voiceless. In the final position in many words it is often dropped in rapid and informal speech, with the result that any short vowel coming immediately before it is lengthened. Thus many words ending in /aa/ in Urdu are written with an /h/ in Urdu orthography.

Listen to the following words.

haal	hal	huur	hauz
bahaa	mahaa	mahal	sahan
raah	kooh	mẽẽh	rah

17.1. /h/; initially. Repeat after the tape.

haal	hal	huur	hun
hiilaa	hil	hoonaa	hootaa
haraa	hilii	hãsii	had
hauz	haiz	haizaa	haathii
hamẽẽ	hiic	hããkaa	haajii

17.2. /h/; medially. Repeat after the tape.

sahan	rihaa	rahii	kahoo
bahoe	rahee	nahaan	nahaanaa
kahaanii	saheelii	paheelii	jahaaz
kahii	wahaa	yahii	rahuu
wahii	bahuu	caahoo	zaahid

17.3. /h/; finally. Repeat after the tape.

kah	kaah	raah	rah
muuh	caah	kooh	sah
ruuh	tah	wajah	jagah
aah	zibaah	sabiih	maliih
zibah	zabiih	birah	gunaah

18. Consonant Clusters: Only a very few consonant-cluster types occur initially in Urdu; word-finally, however, there occur many more. Intervocalically, where one consonant ends a syllable and another consonant begins the next, there occur two types of consonant clusters; the first type, in which the two consonants are different from each other, we call Non-geminate; the second type, in which both the consonants are identical, we call Geminate. The second type is new for the speakers of English, and should be carefully practiced.

18.1. Initial Consonant Clusters. Repeat after the tape.

kyaa	kyaarii	kroodh	kriim
pyaar	pyoosii	kyõõ	priit
pleeT	bleeD	byaah	syootii

18.2. Final Consonant Clusters. Repeat after the tape.

abr	qabr	sabr	jabr
qatl	ajr	fajr	taxt
saxt	faxr	izn	uzr
farz	carb	Sarm	narm
murG	surx	tarz	sard
gird	garm	urs	dars
darj	burj	misr	misl
nasl	nasb	nasr	nasx
aSk	muSk	haSr	jaSn
kufr	dafn	kooft	harf
waqt	mukt	naql	Sakl
aql	qalb	film	zulm
jald	jild	zulf	fils
amn	amr	Simr	sant
band	buund	seendh	aranD
rang	ranj	bhang	caand
niind	uns	tanz	Sahr
bahr	sehr	ahd	ahl

18.3. Medial Consonant Clusters (Non-gemminate). Repeat after the tape.

abrii	daabnaa	dumbaa	Dubkii
lapkaa	apnee	thoopnaa	campii
qatlee	Galtii	saxtii	jitnaa
palTaa	paTrii	haTnaa	ghanTii
bijlii	mirjaan	ujlaa	rajbii
kuclaa	noocnaa	nooctaa	qamcii
mazhab	arhar	mehraa	kohnaa
rahnaa	rahtee	bahlaa	mehnat
taslaa	kasnaa	phãstaa	barsõõ
caSmaa	arSii	farSoo	aksar
akSar	aSjaar	insaan	mansuub
kaSmiir	kiSmiS	turSii	aabSaar
adnaa	mardoo	zindagii	mugdar
umdaa	zindaa	cããdnii	badlii
mazluum	farzii	qabzaa	jazbaa
murdaa	cunrii	carbii	nagrii
taknaa	tinkaa	inkaar	mankaa
rangiin	jangii	jugnuu	baknaa
marham	mehram	mulhid	mohlat
alqaab	amlii	qalmii	khulnaa
andhaa	kandhaa	gambhiir	andheer
bikhraa	likhnaa	likhtee	rakhnee
suujhnaa	suujhtii	suujhtee	saadhnaa
cubhnaa	cubhtaa	cubhtii	buujhtee
kaaTtaa	kaTtaa	laRkaa	lakRii
taRpoo	kapRee	looTtii	looTtee
lauTtee	laRtee	laRtii	laRnaa
lauTtaa	kubRaa	camRii	tagRaa

18.3 Continued.

addhaa
allhaR
kacchii
muDDhaa
gabbhaa
gaDDhaa
katthaa
muTThii
rakkhii
maddham
laTThaa
ciTThii
cakkhoo
macchar
natthii
dakkhin

maTThaa
lacchee
udhRii
pankhaa
akkhaR
gaDDhee
karghaa
badhnii
baddhii
nannhii
ubhraa
samjhaa
kacchaa
nannhee
ukhRaa
barchii

18.4. Medial Consonant Clusters (Gemminate). Repeat after the tape.

abbaa
thappaR
baTTii
kaccii
dhabbaa
sattar
laTTuu
kaccee
gappii
rattii
kujjii
baccee
cuppii
battii
chajjaa
hijjee

raddii
laDDuu
kurrii
izzat
bhaddee
haDDii
mirriiz
nassaar
maddaah
aDDaa
tarraar
rassii
kadduu
ThuDDii
lazzat
lassii

maSSaaq
Takkar
zimmaa
cillee
kuffaar
jagguu
ammii
jhllii
kaffaaraa
laggii
gummee
billii
makkaar
kammal
pallee
kuttee

gannaa
dhannii
ayyaar
kawwaa
sunnaa
awwal
ayyaam
jhawwaa
cunnuu
jawwaad
gawayyaa
mayyaa
kannii
jawwaar
nayyaa
layyaa

18.5. Medial gemminates contrasted with intervocalic single consonant. Repeat after the tape.

1. abbaa abaa 2. gappii tapii
3. cappal tapan 4. rattii ratii
5. sattar katar 6. kujjaa kujaa
7. dhajjii bajii 8. kaccaa nacaa

9.	baccee	bacee	10.	raddaa	adaa
11.	kadduu	kaduu	12.	lazzat	nazar
13.	lassii	kasii	14.	nassaar	nisaar
15.	maSSaaq	maSak	16.	Takkar	Takaa
17.	dhakkee	Dhakee	18.	gummaa	gumaa
19.	ammii	kamii	20.	pallee	palee
21.	cillee	silee	22.	dhannii	dhanii
23.	sunnaa	sunaa	24.	bunnaa	bunaa
25.	ginnaa	ginaa	26.	kannii	kanii
27.	ballaa	balaa	28.	kullii	khulii
29.	awwal	kawal	30.	jawwaad	mawaad
31.	jawwaar	jawaar	32.	gayyaa	gayaa
33.	layyaa	bayaa	34.	ayyaam	payaam
35.	saqqaa	laqaa	36.	huqqaa	baqaa
37.	ginnii	ginii	38.	laggii	lagii
39.	rassaa	rasaa	40.	khaTTaa	ghaTaa

18.6. Repeat after the tape.

1. yee laggii hai.
2. yee lagii hai.
3. eek Takkar.
4. eek Takaa.
5. eek eek dhajjii.
6. eek eek sajii.
7. us-kii lazzat.
8. us-kii nazar.
9. baRii dhannii.
10. baRii dhanii.
11. ammii aaii.
12. kamii aaii.
13. kaccii rooTii.
14. nucii rooTii.
15. un-kee pallee.
16. un-kee palee.
17. eek rattii-kaa.
18. eek ratii-kaa.
19. baRii cappal.
20. baRii capal.

19. Vowel Clusters and Diphthongs. Repeat after the tape.

laaii	laaoo	laaee	laaee
laaii	laauu	paaii	paaii
khaaee	khaauu	khaaoo	khaaii
bhaaii	naaii	gaii	laii
jaii	bhaii	mauu	gauu
sooee	sooii	soouu	roouu
rooii	rooee	khoouu	khooee
chuee	huee	chuii	huii
suuii	suii	huii	huee
baaes	saaeb	faaeq	naaeb
baaiis	saaiis	qaaem	qaaed

19.1. Words with /'/. Repeat after the tape.

mu'ayyan	ta'ayyaun
na'iim	ma'an
Sa'uur	ba'iid
ra'uunat	mau'uud
taa'iid	taa'uun
mu'assar	mu'aqqaf
ta'allii	ta'aalaa
bai'at	

SCRIPT

URDU SCRIPT

Introduction

Urdu Script is a modified form of the Arabic script; beside the original Arabic letters it includes Persian innovations as well as some of its own, for sounds peculiar to Urdu. The current alphabet contains 37 linear letters besides a number of supplementary diacritics. Most of the consonantal sounds are represented by a single discrete letter in the alphabet; however, a few are represented by more than one. This multiplicity of symbols arises from the fact that Arabic and Persian words borrowed into Urdu have preserved their original spelling; though the original pronunciation has been changed, causing the loss of the original phonetic distinction. As for vowels, only two of the long vowels are uniquely indicated in the final position; the rest, especially the short vowels, have to be guessed from the context.

Urdu is written from right to left. The script is cursive, in that most of the letters in a word are joined; however it is not strictly linear, like the Roman script, and in the common writing letters are often placed above or below each other. There are various styles of calligraphy; the one most commonly used in Urdu publications is *Nasta'liq*. Most of the ordinary Urdu printing is done by photo or lithographic processes, using hand-written *Nasta'liq*. However, there is a tendency now to use a variety of *Naskh* type for scholarly publications. Apart from certain minor details which result from the exigencies of type printing, the two styles do not differ very much. In our script lessons we will treat both the styles; the *Nasta'liq*, however, will get more attention because the student will have to use that to write Urdu himself.

There are no capital letters in Urdu. The only useful distinction to be made between letter-types is that between connectors and non-connectors. Some Urdu letters do not join with any following letter; these we shall call non-connectors. The rest, which do connect with a following letter in the same word, will be referred to as connectors.

Urdu letters differ in shape according to their position in the word, and also often depending upon what letter precedes or follows. The variants can occur in any of the four basic positions recognized in an Urdu word. These positions are:

1. Initial: not connected to any preceding letter, but to the following letter in the word.
2. Medial: connected to both the preceding and the following letters.
3. Final: connected to the preceding letter, but not connected to any letter following it.
4. Independent; unconnected on either side.

Thus, while the connectors can have up to four variants, the non-connectors can have only the last two. In the alphabet letters are given in their independent shapes; each letter has a name, beginning with the sound it represents, which must be memorized for reference.

In the following units on script, Urdu letters are presented not in their alphabetical order, but on the basis of graphic similarities between them. Also we have decided to use in the beginning only those letters which represent Urdu consonants, and keep the peculiarly Arabic letters until later.

UNIT I

1. In this unit we introduce a set of consonantal letters, referred to as the 'bee' series, as well as four other letters, which represent all the long vowels of Urdu, aa, ii, ee, oo, uu, ai, au. The letters are first introduced in their independent shapes; each letter has a name by which it will be referred to in the text when its variants are discussed.

	Symbol	Name	Sound
A. 'bee' series	ب	bee	b
	پ	pee	p
	ت	tee	t
	ٹ	Tee	T
	ن	nuun	n
B.	ا	alif	aa
	و	waaoo	w; uu, oo, au
	ی	chooTii yee	y; ii
	ے	baRii yee	y; ee, ai

1.1. 'alif': It is a non-connector; its final shape is the same as the independent shape. After a consonant it represents aa; thus با = baa, پا = paa. Initial aa is indicated by 'alif' with a superscript, ~ 'mad', over it; thus آ = aa, آبا = aabaa.

1.2. 'waaoo': It is a non-connector and its final shape is the same as the independent shape. Before a vowel letter, e. g., 'alif', it represents w; وا = waa. After consonants, i. e., syllable or word final, it can represent any of the three long vowels, uu, oo, and au; the choice of the particular vowel will depend upon the context, i. e., upon the phonetic word represented by the writing. Thus بو = buu or boo or bau, depending upon the context.

1.3. 'chooTii yee' and 'baRii yee': These two letters are connectors. They contrast only in their final and independent shapes. Their initial and medial variants are identical. Thus:

	Independent	Initial	Medial	Final
'chooTii yee'	ی	یـ	ـیـ	ـی
'baRii yee'	ے	یـ	ـیـ	ـے

Therefore in their initial and medial positions we refer to them as 'yee'. 'yee' before a vowel letter, e. g., 'alif', represents y; یا = yaa, یاوا = yaawaa. After consonants, i. e., syllable or word final, the two letters have contrasting variants. In that position 'chooTii yee' represents ii, and 'baRii yee' represents ee or ai, depending upon the context. Thus: بی = bii, وی = wii. وے = wee, wai. بے = bee, bai.

1.4. 'bee' series: All the letters of this series are connectors and have similar variants. As can be seen from their independent shapes, they differ mainly in the number and position of the accompanying dots. Their final shapes are the same as the independent shapes.

Name	Sound	Independent	Initial	Medial	Final
bee	b	ب	بـ	ـبـ	ـب
pee	p	پ	پـ	ـپـ	ـپ
tee	t	ت	تـ	ـتـ	ـت
Tee	T	ٹ	ٹـ	ـٹـ	ـٹ
nuun	n	ن	نـ	ـنـ	ـن

Note 1: In the above chart we have given only one initial shape for each letter of this series. This is true as far as Urdu type is concerned. (See Appendix B.) But in ordinary writing there are other variants which can best be presented as follows:

Syllable-type: CV̄

	-'alif'	-'waaoo'	-'chooTii yee'	-'baRii yee'
ب	با	بو	بی	بے
پ	پا	پو	پی	پے
ت	تا	تو	تی	تے
ٹ	ٹا	ٹو	ٹی	ٹے
ن	نا	نو	نی	نے

Note 2: Initial and medial 'yee' has the same basic shape as the 'bee' series letters: یا = yaa با = baa

Illustrations

bai	بے	bee	بے	bii	بی	bau	بو	buu	بو	boo	بو	baa	با
pai	پے	pee	پے	pii	پی	pau	پو	puu	پو	poo	پو	paa	پا
tai	تے	tee	تے	tii	تی	tau	تو	tuu	تو	too	تو	taa	تا
Tai	ٹے	Tee	ٹے	Tii	ٹی	Tau	ٹو	Tuu	ٹو	Too	ٹو	Taa	ٹا
nai	نے	nee	نے	nii	نی	nau	نو	nuu	نو	noo	نو	naa	نا
aanaa	آنا	aayaa	آیا	aawaa	آوا	paayaa	پایا	waayaa	وایا	baayaa	بایا		

Reading Exercise

Read the following words, using all the permissible pronunciations.

آتا ٹوپی توتا ٹوٹے پاٹو تانی

بوٹی یاسے ناتی پونا پوٹو تابی

باتے پاپو تونی ٹوتا بابو ٹابی

وانی باوسے آوا ناپے آپی یابی

یابے ناپو پوٹے بوتو ٹوٹو ٹے ٹے

وانو بایا یاٹے پوتا پاناتی ٹاوپے

یونانی باتونی بوتانی پوناٹے ناٹونی یاپوٹے

Writing Exercise

aanaa
aaTee
TuuTaa
buutee
nuuTaa
baabuu
yootuu

paayaa
pootee
naanuu
aabuu
Toonii
bootoo
Taanee

baaTaa
waabee
yaanii
pauyaa
Tootee
TaaTaa
paayuu

pootii
yaapai
yaawii
Taapii
taatai
nooTii
waaTaa

toopii
naaboo
naayuu
aanee
baayaa
pautee
yuunaanii

UNIT 2

2. In the previous unit we discussed syllables of the type: (C)$\bar{V}$: aa, baa, puu, nee, etc. In this unit we will consider syllable-type, (C)$\bar{V}$C. We will start with syllables beginning in a consonant.

2.1. CaaC: 'alif' being a non-connector, has no separate medial shape. The final consonant will be written separately, in its independent shape. Thus:

با = baa and باپ = baap
تا = taa and تان = taan
پا = paa and پاٹ = paaT

2.2. Coo, au, uuC: 'waaoo' again has no separate medial shape. The final consonant is written in its independent shape. Thus:

بو = boo, buu bau and بوٹ = booT, buuT, bauT
نو = noo, nuu, nau and نون = noon, nuun, nauT
ٹو = Too, Tuu, Tau and ٹوٹ = TooT, TuuT, TauT

As mentioned earlier only an ability to recognize the total word would help the student to read the above words correctly: the first as buuT, the second as noon or nuun, depending on the context, and the third as TuuT. Thus continuous reading practice and repetition of exercises cannot be overstressed in connection with learning the Urdu script.

2.3. Cii, ee, aiC: 'chooTii yee' and 'baRii yee' are connectors and have identical initial and medial variants (See 1.3.); and in those two positions we refer to them as simple 'yee'. The following consonant is written in its final shape, which in the case of letters of the 'bee' series is the same as the independent shape. However, the important thing to note is that before a medial 'yee' the initial variant of a 'bee' series letter is different from that before a final 'yee', discussed in the previous unit. This new initial shape is identical with the medial. Thus:

بی = bii and بیٹ = biiT

بے = bee, bai and بیٹ = beeT, baiT

نی = nii, نے = nee, nai and نین = niin, neen, nain

پی = pii, پے = pee, pai and پیت = piit, peet, pait

From the above it follows that a word like beeTaa will be written

بے = bee and ٹا = Taa ---> بیٹا = beeTaa

Likewise: بے = bee and ٹی = Tii ---> بیٹی = beeTii

بی = bii and وی = wii ---> بیوی = biiwii

پی = pii and تی = tii ---> پیتی = piitii

پی = pii and تے = tee ---> پیتے = piitee

پے = pee and ٹے = Tee ---> پیٹے = peeTee

Pay special attention to the position of the dots, etc., for in the end they are the chief distinctive markers of these letters.

Words with Initial Long Vowels

2.4. aaC: We already know how an initial aa may be written: 'alif' plus the superscript, 'mad'. Thus:

آ = aa and آن = aan

آ = aa and آب = aab

2.5. uu, oo auC: 'alif' followed by 'waaoo' may represent any of the three vowels. Thus:

او = uu, oo, au

اون = uun, oon, aun

اوٹ = uuT, ooT, auT

2.6. ii, ee, aiC: 'alif' followed by 'yee' may represent any of the three vowels. Thus:

ای = ii
اے = ee, ai
ایت = iit, eet, ait
این = iin, een, ain
اینا = iinaa, eenaa, ainaa
ایپو = iipuu, eepuu, aipuu, etc.

Illustrations

naan نان taap تاپ Taat ٹاٹ paaT پاٹ taan تان baap باپ
yaub یوب puut پوت toop توپ TuuT ٹوٹ noon نون buuT بوٹ
baiT بیٹ piit پیت peeT پیٹ Tiip ٹیپ nain نین beet بیت
Toopii ٹوپی piinaa پینا biitaa بیتا neewii نیوی biiwii بیوی biin بین
aawaa آوا tiitee تیتے piiTaa پیٹا biitii بیتی piitee پیتے TaiTii ٹیٹی
ainii اینی ain این uub اوب uun اون aan آن aab آب
aonuun آون ooT اوٹ eeToo ایٹو aiT ایٹ iitee ایتے eet ایت

Reading Exercises

Practice all the possible pronunciations:

ات تاپ ناٹ نوٹ ٹوپ یون بین پیٹ
بیوی نینی پیتی پیتے بیٹے آبی آب اون
بوٹ اینی ٹیپے پینا بینو بونے بوپ بیٹو
پیتو بینی تینے پیٹے ایٹو اوٹ این آن
آبیٹ اوتی اوتین آتین بین آوان تاوان ناٹوٹ

The following are meaningful words. They are given here with their correct pronunciation and meaning. It will help the student to include these words in his 'passive' vocabulary of Urdu.

بیٹا	(beeTaa) son	بیٹی	(beeTii) daughter		
پیٹ	(peeT) stomach	باپ	(baap) father	ٹوٹا	(TuuTaa) broken
پینا	(piinaa) to drink	ٹوپی	(Toopii) cap	اون	(uun) wool
اونی	(uunii) woolen	بوٹ	(buuT) boots	پاپی	(paapii) sinner
بیوی	(biiwii) wife				

Writing Exercise

boon
booTii
piitee
yuunaan
Toopii
aabaatii
peeTuu

peeTii
noon
nuut
aabuun
piinee
beeTee
taswaan

neewii
aibii
neeTii
aibiin
eeT
Tuutee
biitaan

aanii
aabii
Taipii
paap
biin
tainii
Taanuunii

TaaT
beeToo
TuuTaa
tiitee
biinee
tiinii
uuteen

UNIT 3

3. Consonantal Letters (continued)

	Symbol	Name	Sound
A. 'daal' series	د	daal	d
	ڈ	Daal	D
B. 'ree' series	ر	ree	r
	ڑ	Ree	R
	ز	zee	z
	ژ	žee	ž
C.	ہ	chooTii hee	h

Note 1: 'zee' is the most common letter for the sound 'z'. There are three other letters (see 7.3. ff.), which are pronounced as 'z', but their usage is restricted to words of Arabic origin which have retained their original spelling. 'zee' is used for 'z' in words borrowed from languages other than Arabic, e. g., English.

Note 2: 'ž' occurs in a very small number of words borrowed from Persian. It may however be used to represent 'ž' in other borrowed words too.

Note 3: 'chooTii hee' represents 'h' as distinct from aspiration. Urdu has a separate symbol for aspiration (see 5.4.). It has other functions too, which will be discussed later.

Positional Variants

3.1. Letters of the 'daal' series are non-connectors, therefore they do not have separate initial and medial variants. Their final shape, however, is different from the independent. Finally they' look similar to the independent shape of the 'ree' series. The important thing to note is that the preceding letter connects at the bottom of 'daal', and not at the top as the 'ree'.

	Independent	Final
daal	د	ـد
Daal	ڈ	ـڈ

Examples: دا = daa   آد = aad   بودا = boodaa

بید = beed   دید = diid   دیدار = diidaar

بیدار = beedaar   ڈاب = Daab   دین = diin   نادان = naadaan

3.2. Letters of the 'ree' series are likewise non-connectors. They, too, have a final shape different from the independent.

	Independent	Final
ree	ر	ـر
Ree	ڑ	ـڑ
zee	ز	ـز
žee	ژ	ـژ

Examples: راز = raaz   ریت = reet   آری = aarii

تیر = tiir   تیز = teez   تیزی = teezii

تازی = taazii   بیڑی = beeRii   زین = ziin

روز = rooz   روزی = roozii   ایڑی = eeRii

Compare the following words for the distinction between a final 'daal' and a final 'ree'.

بید = beed   بیر = beer   نید = need

نیز = niiz   ایدی = eedii   ایڑی = eeRii

Also see the section on type (   ).

3.3. 'chooTii hee' has a number of variants in the hand-written style.

Independent	Initial	Medial	Final
ہ	ﮨ ، ﮨ	ﮩ	ـہ ، ﮧ

The two initial variants occur as follows:

ﮨ : before 'alif', final 'chooTii' and 'baRii yee', and letters of 'daal' and 'ree' series.

ﮨ : elsewhere. It is always used before 'waaoo', letters of the 'jiim' series, and 'miim'; before other consonantal letters, in ordinary writing, it is often replaced by the other shape. In professional writing, however, the distinction is consistently maintained.

Examples: ہا = haa ہی = hii ہے = hai ہو = hoo

ہوتی = hootii ہیر = hiir ہیٹ = haiT

Before the medial variant of 'chooTii hee'. 'yee' has a variant

ﯿ . Thus ہیہات = heehaat; بیہودہ = beehuudaa

The two final variants occur as follows:

ﮧ : in the root-imperative forms of verbs like bahnaa, rahnaa, etc., and also in certain words, to indicate a final 'h' after long ii and ee. Example: توجیہ = taujiih.

ـہ : elsewhere finally, after connectors.

Note 1: Except for some very common words (see 3.4.), most of the words ending in a final 'chootii hee' preceded by a consonantal letter are pronounced as ending in a long vowel, -aa. Thus the numeral 13, teeraa, differs from the possessive pronominal, teeraa, 'thy', only in the spelling. تیرہ (teeraa) 13; تیرا (teeraa), 'thy, thine'. (All the numbers from 11 to 18 are written with a final 'chooTii hee': چودہ (caudaa) 14; بارہ (baaraa) 12. زینہ = ziinaa روزانہ = roozaanaa

Additional Material

3.4. Learn the following words with a final 'chootii hee'.

وہ (woo) he, she, that, etc.
یہ (yee) this, these
نہ (na) no
روزانہ (roozaana) daily

3.5. 'nuun' has a final and independent variant, without a central dot. It is called 'nuun-i-Gunnah', and indicates a final nasalized vowel. Thus:

بان = baan, but باں = bãã
تین = tiin, but ہوتیں = hootĩĩ

Initially and medially, 'nuun' is always written with its dot; one has to judge from the context whether it indicates a nasalized vowel or a medial 'n'. Example: اینٹ = ĩĩT نیند = niind;
باندی = bããdii ڈانڈی = DããDii روندا = rõõdaa

Learn the Following Words

ہاں	(hãã) yes	ہیں	(hẽẽ) are	نہیں	(nahĩĩ) no
ہوں	(hũũ) am				

Illustrations

ڈوبا	Duubaa	ڈاب	Daab	دین	deen	بیداری	beedaarii	بیدار	beedaar
تیزی	teezii	تیز	teez	تیر	tair	دیری	deerii	دیر	deer
دید	diid	آداب	aadaab	دین	diin	زین	ziin	بیڑی	beeRii
آڑی	aaRii	آری	aarii	ریت	reet	وار	waar	نیز	niiz
پورا	puuraa	بور	baur	پیڑ	peeR	ایڑی	eeRii	ہوں	hõõ
ہو	hoo	ہے	hai	ہی	hii	تیرا	teeraa	آواز	aawaaz
وہ	woo	یہ	yee	ہاں	hãã	ہیں	hẽẽ	ہوتیں	hootĩĩ
ہوتی	hootii	بارہ	baaraa	راہ	raah	ہوں	hũũ	آزار	aazaar

بیزار beezaar روزانہ roozaanaa زینہ ziinaa پیر pair پیدا paidaa

Reading Exercises

Practice all the possible pronunciations:

داب دانی بید ریت تیسر تیز دوڑا دوڑسے

پیدا داہی زینہ دانہ دور روز نیز ہاں

ہوں ہوتیں بیڑی پیڑ تیرا ہیں بارہ پیر

ڈاب ڈور روزانہ ہار ہانڈی باری ژاں زوروں

اینٹ ایڑی ہیٹ تیہا پیہا بیہے زیبی ہونٹ

واری. پودا ہیر ریہو روندا باندی بوند بیدانہ

Meaningful words for passive vocabulary:

دین	(diin) religion	بارہ	(baaraa) 12
تیرہ	(teeraa) 13	پورا	(puuraa) full, entire
پیڑ	(peeR) tree	تیز	(teez) fast
آواز	(aawaaz) voice, sound	پیر	(pair) foot
پیدا ہونا	(paidaa) (hoonaa) to be born	ریت	(reet) sand
آزادی	(aazaadii) freedom	دیوار	(diiwaar) wall

Meaningful words for active vocabulary:

وہ	(woo) he, that, etc.	یہ	(yee) this, these
نہ	(ne) no, not	ہاں	(hAA) yes
روزانہ	(roozaanaa) daily	اور	(aur) and
دو	(doo) 2	تین	(tiin) 3
نو	(nau) 9	نہیں	(nahII) no, not
ہیں	(hEE) are	ہوں	(hUU) am

Writing Exercise

beed
beeR
oor
hootĩĩ
reet bããdii
hiir
ziihaud

diid
beeRii
aah
hãĩ
hait
naahiid

diidaar
biiz
raah
hũũ
ĩĩT
raahii
ziinaa

Duub
eeRii
tiin
teeraa
bããT
beehuur
caudaa

teez
aur
hootii
paidaa
paaT
bããdii
beezaar

UNIT 4

4. Consonantal Letters (continued)

All the following letters are connectors.

	Symbol	Name	Sound
A. 'jiim' series	ج	jiim	j
	چ	cee	c
	خ	xee	x
B. 'kaaf' series	ک	kaaf	k
	گ	gaaf	g
C.	ل	laam	l
	م	miim	m

Positional Variants

	Independent	Initial	Medial	Final
'jiim' series	ج	جـ	ـجـ	ـج
'kaaf' series	ک	ﻛ، ﮐ	ﻜ، ﮑ	ـک
laam	ل	لـ	ـلـ	ـل
miim	م	مـ	ـمـ	ـم

4.1. Before the letters of the 'jiim' series and 'miim', the letters of the 'bee' series as well as 'yee' and 'chooTii hee' have a variant ٮـ . Thus بج = baj; بیج = biij;

بم = bam; بیم = biim; ایم = eem.

4.2. The two initial (and medial) variants of 'kaaf' and 'gaaf' have the following distribution:

ﻛ before 'alif' and 'laam'; کا = kaa; گل = gul.

ﮐ elsewhere; کے = kee گی = gii; کیک = keek.

Illustrations

laill	لیل	meez	میز	biic	بیچ	nooc	نوچ
xair	خیر	caal	چال	jaan	جان	muulii	مولی
beecaa	بیچا	niicaa	نیچا	kooT	کوٹ	koo	کو
kaun	کون	kaam	کام	lẽẽgee	لینگے	leegaa	لیگا
dẽẽgee	دینگے	deegaa	دیگا	deetaa	دیتا	leetaa	لیتا
leenaa	لینا	xaalii	خالی	ciil	چیل	giilaa	گیلا
kiiRii	کیڑی	meeraa	میرا	meelaa	میلہ	mailaa	میلا
beecii	بیچی	ũũcaa	اونچا	miil	میل	bail	بیل
gool	گول	meex	میخ	xaalaa	خالہ	laulaak	لولاک
caudaa	چودہ	jiinaa	جینا	leeTaa	لیٹا	aagee	آگے
maaliidaa	مالیدہ	peeciidaa	پیچیدہ	hõõgee	ہوں گے	dũũgaa	دوں گا
lũũgaa	لونگا						

Reading Exercises

Practice all the possible pronunciations:

کوچ چاک باگ بیگ تاگے تانگے ماسنگے

کاموں نامی میلی بیلے میلہ لیٹا لینگے

چیلہ اونچا خالہ خالو خوراک کیڑا خاکہ

نام داموں بالیدہ لولی نیچی جیتا جینے

چودہ بوسلے خیمہ جیبی مانجا میرا میخ

گیلی لوکی میلان کانٹا نیچے ہونگا لیتی

Meaningful words for passive vocabulary:

چودہ	(caudaa) 14	چالاک	(caalaak) clever
جوتا	(juutaa) shoe	کیلا	(keelaa) banana
گول	(gool) round	آلہ	(aalaa) instrument
جینا	(jiinaa) to live	تیل	(teel) oil
آرام	(aaraam) comfort	کونا، کونہ	(koonaa) corner
موزہ	(moozaa) socks	خاندان	(xaandaan) family
ڈالنا	(Daalnaa) to pour, to put into	مولانا	(maulaanaa) a Moslem Learned man
چور	(coor) thief	چوری	(coorii) theft
گاڑی	(gaaRii) cart; car, train		

Meaningful words for active vocabulary:

کام	(kaam) work	کون	(kaun) who?
کے بیچ	(-kee biic) in the middle of	اونچا	(UUcaa) high
نیچا	(niicaa) low	میز	(meez) table
دینا	(deenaa) to give	گیلا	(giilaa) wet
میلا	(mailaa) dirty	میلہ	(meelaa) fair
میرا	(meeraa) my, mine	کے آگے	(kee aagee) in front of
میں	(mEI) I	کالا	(kaalaa) black
خالی	(xaalii) empty	بات چیت	(baat-ciit) conversation
		میں	(-mEE) in

Writing Exercise

jooRaa
gaaRii
teelii
meelaa
ciiR
aadmii
geeruu
hUUgaa
laam
biimaar
mEE
xair
Moonii
Daalnaa
hEI
niicii

keelee
aameez
aahẽẽ
baat ciit
gũũgaa

bailõõ
maulaanaa
caudaa
mãĩ

ciizẽẽ
beecẽẽgee
meerii
kããTaa

xaamii
ũũcee
dẽẽgee
ciiz

UNIT 5

Consonantal Letters (continued)

5. All the following letters are connectors:

	Symbol	Name	Sound
A. 'siin' series	س	siin	s
	ش	šiin	š
B.	ف	fee	f
	ق	qaaf	q
	غ	Gain	G
	ھ	doo-cašmii hee	Aspiration

Positional Variants

	Independent	Initial	Medial	Final
'siin' series	س	سـ	ـسـ	ـس
fee	ف	فـ	ـفـ	ـف
qaaf	ق	قـ	ـقـ	ـق
Gain	غ	غـ	ـغـ	ـغ

5.1. 'šiin' differs from 'siin' only in the addition of three dots to the basic shape. It should be noted that the initial and medial variants have three hooks (šoošah), thus: سا = saa; سی = sii; سونا = soonaa; جیسا = jaisaa; کیسا = kaisaa. 'siin' and 'šiin' have another set of variants; these are used where too many connected hooks may cause confusion.

Independent	Initial	Medial	Final
س	سـ	ـسـ	ـس
ش	شـ	ـشـ	ـش

Examples: جیسا (jaisaa) = جیسا کیسا (kaisaa) = کیسا

ایسا (aisaa) = ایسا (see Note 1 below).

Note 1: Letters of the 'bee' series and 'yee' have a different initial variant before 'siin, Šiin, fee, qaaf, Gain': بـ = بـ

Examples: پف , بغ , نق . Also note how an initial 'bee' series letter or 'yee' is connected with the long variant of 'siin': ایسا and not ایسا , which is wrong. However ایسا is right, too. Compare with کیش = keeŠ.

5.2. 'fee' and 'qaaf', initial and medial, differ only in the number of dots. They behave like 'bee' series letters, before 'jiim' and 'miim'. Examples: کیف = kaif; باقی = baaqii; قیدی = qaidii; نیفہ = neefaa; قینچی qÃĨcii; کیفا = kaifaa.

5.3. 'Gain' has the maximum of four variants. Examples: باغ = baaG; باغی = baaGii; دیغا = diiGaa; میغ = meeG.

Note 1: The medial 'Gain" looks similar to a medial 'fee' except that 'Gain' is flattened on top and 'fee' is not.

Compare: نیفہ = neefaa : تیغہ = teeGaa

کیفی = kaifii : دیغی = deeGii

Also in writing, 'fee' is often not filled like 'Gain'.

Final 'Gain' looks similar to the letters of the 'jiim' series, especially to 'xee'. But note how the preceding letter is connected differently in each case:

Compare: میغ = meeG : میخ = meex

تیغ = teeG : چیخ = ciix

5.4. 'doo-caŠmii hee' is distinguished from 'chooTii hee' in ordinary writing; it represents aspiration, i. e., the consonant preceding it is pronounced aspirated. Thus, unlike Devanagari, there are no special symbols in Urdu for aspirates. (See also Appendix B).

Letters of the 'bee' series are written / before a 'doo-cašmii hee'. All the letters preceding it join it in the middle, i. e., with the medial line, and not on the side. Below we give all the aspirated consonants.

لابھ	دیبھی	بھان
لاپھ	دیپھی	پھان
لاتھ	دیتھی	تھان
لاٹھ	دیٹھی	ٹھان
لاجھ	دیجھی	جھان
لاچھ	دیچھی	چھان
لادھ	دیدھی	دھان
لاڈھ	دیڈھی	ڈھان
لاڑھ	دیڑھی	اوڑھا
لاکھ	دیکھی	کھان
لاگھ	دیگھی	گھان
		اولھا
		اومھا
		اونھا

Illustrations

keeš	کیش	šoor	شور	šeer	شیر
siiRhii	سیڑھی	sair	سیر	baaG	باغ
Gaur	غور	xauf	خوف	qaul	قول
saifii	سیفی	siimaab	سیماب	hooš	ہوش
iiqaan	القان	aafaat	آفات	šauq	شوق
kooRhii	کوڑھی	siidhaa	سیدھا	ããdhii	آندھی
niicaa	نیچا	piichaa	پیچھا	kooThii	کوٹھی
phẽẽk	پھینک	thailii	تھیلی	dhootii	دھوتی
goobhii	گوبھی	phiikaa	پھیکا	khaanaa	کھانا
Dhiilaa	ڈھیلا	boojh	بوجھ	jhaag	جھاگ
ooRhee	اوڑھے	ghooRaa	گھوڑا	baiThaa	بیٹھا
deekhaa	دیکھا	tiikhaa	تیکھا	deekh	دیکھا
Thiik	ٹھیک	bhiiR	بھیڑ	cheeR	چھیڑ
cuulhaa	چولھا				

Reading Exercises

List of meaningful words for passive vocabulary:

سیر	(sair) sightseeing	شوق	(šauq) desire
باغ	(baaG) garden	سیدھے	(khaanaa) to eat
سیدھے	(siidhee) straight ahead	آندھی	(ããdhii) dust storm
پھیکا	(phiikaa) dull (in color or taste)	گھوڑا	(ghooRaa) horse
گاڑھا	(gaaRhaa) thick (liquid only)	پھینکنا	(phẽẽknaa) to throw away
بھیڑ	(bhiir) crowd	چھوڑنا	(chooRnaa) to leave behind

List of meaningful words for active vocabulary:

چھوٹا	(chooTaa) small	شادی	(šaadii) marriage
سوچنا	(soocnaa) to think	بیٹھنا	(baiThnaa) to sit
دیکھنا	(deekhnaa) to see	آنکھ	(ããkh) eye

کے ساتھ	(-kee saath) with X	کے پیچھے	(-kee piichee) behind X
پوچھنا	(puuchnaa) to ask	ایسا	(aisaa) such (demonstrative)
جیسا	(jaisaa) such, as (relative)	کیسا	(kaisaa) of what kind?
ٹھیک	(Thiik) correct	باقی	(baaqii) remaining
خوف	(xauf) fear	تھوڑا	(thooRaa) a little
میٹھا	(miiThaa) sweet		

Writing Exercises

baaRh
ghooRõõ
Dhiilee
baiThĩĩ
peešaab
peešii
baaGii
qãĩcii
piiTh
siikhaa
seem
šiirĩĩ
deeG
phããdaa

thooRaa
pũũch
tiikhaa
puuchoo
piichee
aadhii
teeGaa
caaquu
aaTh
bhaabhii
aaseeb
kaaTh
šauq

baiThee
puuchii
siidhaa
šiišii
boojh
lees
aaGaa
iiqaan
šeexii
meethii
haathii
paiGaam
beedhaa

UNIT 6

Short Vowels

6. In Urdu there are three short vowels, a, i, u of wide occurrence; and two short vowels, e and o, which are phonetically distinct, occurring in some very common words, but which can be classified phonemically as positional variants of i and u respectively. In our transcription, however, they are clearly distinguished.

6.1. Initial a, i, and u are indicated by 'alif'

Examples: اب = ab; ان = un, in; اُس = us, is;

انار = anaar; اسی = isii, usii; اُٹھو = uThoo.

Initial e and o, in words borrowed from English, are often written with 'alif' and 'yee' and 'alif' and 'waaoo' respectively; otherwise in words of Indic and Iranian origin they are indicated by 'alif' alone. Examples:

اہرام = ehraam یو-این-او = U. N. O.

6.2. Medial short vowels, a, i, u, are not indicated at all; the consonants are written together and the proper vowel is determined by the context. Medial e and o are indicated by 'yee' and 'waaoo' respectively in English loans only; otherwise they are not indicated.

Examples: تب = tab; تل = til; گل = gul;

گلاب = gulaab; برس = baras; سسک = sisak;

دامن = daaman; کامل = kaamil; کابل = kaabul

6.3. In Urdu short vowels do not occur finally, except in two or three words like نہ (na) 'no'; کہ (ki, ke) 'that' (conjunction), etc. Such words end, as the examples show, in a final 'chooTii hee' which has been lost in pronunciation.

6.4. Unlike Devanagari, Urdu has no half-letters to indicate consonant clusters. If the two consonants are different, both of them are written in the particular order and shape required by the word. Examples:

Initial Clusters: پیار = pyaar; پلیٹ = pleeT کیا = kyaa
Medial Clusters: جمنا = jamnaa دیکھنا = deekhnaa انداز = andaaz
کاٹنا = kaaTnaa روٹھنا = ruuThnaa دفتر = daftar
Final Clusters: امن = amn رسم = rasm راست = raast
قسم = qism رنگ = rang ابر = abr
برف = barf

If the two consonants are identical, only one is written, and a superscript 'tašdiid', ّ , is put over it to indicate that it is pronounced long or doubled. However, any verbal form (infinitive, etc.) in which the stem-end consonant is the same as the consonant of the ending, will be written with both the consonants indicated. Examples:

کتّا = kuttaa رسّی = rassii امّی = ammii
ابّا = abbaa گنّا = gannaa cf. بننا = bannaa
گتّا = gatta cf کاتتا = kaattaa

When an unaspirated consonant is followed by its aspirated form in a cluster, e. g., bbh, ddh, etc., the consonant is written only once, followed by 'doo-cašmii hee', and a 'tašdiid' is placed over the consonant.

گڈّھا = gaDDhaa ننّھی = nannhii ادّھا = addhaa
دکّھن = dakkhin ایّام = ayyaam

6.5. 'hamzah' is a superscript variously written ء or ئ . In Arabic it indicates a glottal stop; in Urdu it is used as part of the original spelling of Arabic loans as well as in a more important way, i. e., to indicate the occurrence of two vowels without an intervening consonant. It is also used to indicate 'ezaafat' after words which end in 'chooTii hee'.

In clusters of two vowels, 'hamzah' always indicates the second. When it represents a short vowel, it is written over a 'šoošah' which is the same as the basic shape of the 'bee' series.

Examples: فائدہ = faaedaa نائب = naaeb کوئلہ = kooelaa.

Note the following words carefully:

جائیے = jaaiyee لائیے = laaiyee آئیے = aaiyee

Long vowels, ii, ee, and ai, are written with 'hamzah' and 'yee'; long vowels, uu, oo, and au, are written with 'hamzah' and 'waaoo'. With 'chooTii' and 'baRii yee', 'hamzah' requires a 'šoošah'. which is the same as the basic shape of the 'bee' series. Thus,

رائی = raaii رائے = raaee کئی = kaii لئے = liee.

With 'waaoo' it requires a 'šoošah' only if praceded by a connector; if the preceding letter is a non-connector, 'hamzah' is simply written over the independent shape of 'waaoo'. Thus:

ناؤ = naaoo گئو = gauu گاؤں = gaaõõ

رؤف = rauuf مئو = mauu

Compare and make sure of the spelling and pronunciation of the following words:

او = oo, uu or au

آو = aaw

آؤ = aaoo

آؤں = aaũũ

آؤنگا = aaũũgaa

گو = goo

گئو = gauu

نیا = nayaa

نئی = naii

نئے = naee

لائے = laaee

لائیے = laaiyee

لے = lee

لئے = liee

لیے = liyee

In some people's speech certain words can be pronounced either with a vowel cluster or with an intervening y. Thus the postposition لئے, can be pronounced either **liee** or **liyee**. There is also the perfect participle form of لینا which can be pronounced either liee or liyee by many people. Likewise in their spelling of such words they tend to write 'hamzah' interchangeably with 'yee'. However the general practice is to write the verbal forms with 'yee' and the non-verbal forms with 'hamzah'. Thus the postposition will be written لئے = liyee. At the same time there are some non-verbal forms in which a y is clearly pronounced and therefore also written.

بیا = (bayaa) weaverbird
بیے = (bayee) weaverbirds
دیا = (diyaa) lamp
دیے = (diyee) lamps

Illustrations

Four verb paradigms:

آنا annaa آتا aataa آتے aatee آتی aatii آتیں aatĩĩ
آیا aayaa آئے aaee آئی aaii آئیں aaĩĩ
آؤں aaũũ آئیں aaẽẽ آؤ aaoo آئیے aaiyee
آؤنگا aaũũgaa آئیں گے aaẽẽgee آئیں گی aaẽẽgii

کہنا kahnaa کہتا kahtaa کہتے kahtee کہتی kahtii
کہتیں kahtĩĩ کہا kahaa کہے kahee کہی kahii
کہیں kahĩĩ کہوں kahũũ کہیں kahẽẽ کہو kahoo
کہہ kah کہئے kahiee or کہیے Kahiyee
کہونگا kahũũgaa کہینگے kahẽẽgee کہینگی kahẽẽgii کہیں گے kahẽẽgee

Some of the paradigmatic forms of ہونا are spelled irregularly and therefore should be noted carefully and memorized.

ہونا	hoonaa	ہوتا	hootaa	ہوتے	hootee	ہوتی	hootii
ہوتیں	hootĩĩ	ہوا	huaa	ہوئے	huee	ہوئی	huii
ہوئیں	huĩĩ	ہوں	hũũ	ہوؤں	hooũũ	ہوں	hõõ
ہوئیں	hooẽẽ	ہو	hoo	ہوئیے	hooiyee	ہوں گا	hũũgaa
ہوں گے	hõõgee						

دینا	deenaa	دیتا	deetaa	دیتے	deetee	دیتی	deetii
دیتیں	deetĩĩ	دیا	diyaa	دیے	diyee	دی	dii
دیں	dĩĩ	دوں	dũũ	دو	doo	دیں	dẽẽ
دیے	dee	دیجیے	diijiee	دوں گا	dũũgaa	دیں گے	dẽẽgee

phir	پھر	paRhnaa	پڑھنا	takliif	تکلیف	tab	تب
gayaa	گیا	uThnaa	اُٹھنا	acchaa	اچھا	jin	جن
kuch	کچھ	kaii	کئی	in	ان	zyaadaa	زیادہ
sab	سب	liee	لئے	apnaa	اپنا	waqt	وقت
baccaa	بچّہ	gaaõõ	گاؤں	bahot	بہت	nahĩĩ	نہیں
par	پر	hamaaraa	ہمارا	ham	ہم	tum	تم
jangal	جنگل	ghar	گھر	kapRaa	کپڑا	itnaa	اتنا
calnaa	چلنا	wajah	وجہ	kabhii	کبھی	baRaa	بڑا
leekin	لیکن	pahlaa	پہلا	tumhaaraa	تمھارا	laRkii	لڑکی
laRkaa	لڑکا	insaan	انسان	waalid	والد	qism	قسم
deekhnaa	دیکھنا	baiThnaa	بیٹھنا	ããkh	آنکھ	doost	دوست
jawaab	جواب	sawaal	سوال	aadmii	آدمی	mard	مرد
raajaa	راجہ	soolaa	سولہ	safeed	سفید	haraa	ہرا
kitnaa	کتنا	kyaa	کیا	kiyaa	کیا	kitaab	کتاب
Gariib	غریب	mašhuur	مشہور	sastaa	سستا	xaraab	خراب

laRkiyãã	لڑکیاں	pandraa	پندرہ	gyaaraa	گیارہ	rakhnaa	رکھنا
jitnaa	جتنا	jab	جب	buraa	برا	amiir	امیر
jawaan	جوان	muškil	مشکل	karnaa	کرنا	saknaa	سکنا
jaantaa	جانتا	jaannaa	جاننا	gannaa	گنّا	bannaa	بننا
caahnaa	چاہنا	din	دن	mulk	ملک	wahãã	وہاں
yahãã	یہاں	jahãã	جہاں	rahnaa	رہنا	milnaa	ملنا

Reading Exercises

Meaningful words for passive vocabulary:

برتن	(bartan) vessels, pot	بادل	(baadal) cloud
رنگ	(rang) color	رکنا	(ruknaa) to stop (in)
دشمن	(dušman) enemy	برس	(baras) year
بہادر	(bahaadur) brave	سفر	(safar) journey
بلّی	(billii) cat	کتّا	(kuttaa) dog
امن	(amn) peace	ہنسی	(hãsii) laughter
شاید	(šaayad) perhaps	بند	(band) shut
خیال	(xayaal) thought, idea		

Meaningful words for active vocabulary:

وقت	(waqt) time	والد	(waalid) father
والدہ	(waalidaa) mother	مشہور	(mašhuur) famous
دن	(din) day	ملک	(mulk) country
یہاں	(yahãã) here	وہاں	(wahãã) there
جگہ	(jagah) place; space	اچّھا	(acchaa) good; well
لیکن	(leekin) but	پہلا	(pahlaa) first
بچّہ	(baccaa) child; baby	بہت	(bahot) much; very
کے لئے	(-kee liee)	نیا	(nayaa) new
کیا	(kyaa) what?		

Writing Exercise

kaTnaa
gayee
leekin
jang
jagah
Kaii
rastah
kitaabẽẽ
kitnii
jawaan
sunnaa
asbaab
aaiyee

kaaTnaa
kapRõõ
hãsii
rangiin
mašhuur
waqt
jaldii
zyaadah
muškilẽẽ
ũũT
pandrah
laaiyee
dikhaaiyee

kaTtaa
deekhtaa
dušman
laRkiyãã
tumhaarii
šist
jahãã
dhannii
rassii
ãguuThii
durust
naaoo

kaaTiee
rahĩĩ
daaman
mulk
nahĩĩ
qismat
liee
acchee
ruuii
raddii
kuštiyãã
mansabii

UNIT 7

7. Arabic lean words in Urdu are written in their original spelling. This entails using certain letters of restricted frequency; such letters represented individually distinct consonants in Arabic, but in Urdu the original pronunciation has either been modified or completely changed. The following is a list of such letters.

Name	Symbol	Urdu Pronunciation
'see'	ث	s
'baRii hee'	ح	h
'zaal'	ذ	z
'swaad'	ص	s
'zwaad'	ض	z
'tooee'	ط	t
'zooee'	ظ	z
'ain'	ع	(see below)

Thus the following letters share similar pronunciations:

ت and ط = t; س، ث and ص = s;

ح and ہ = h; ض، ز، ذ and ظ = z.

7.1. 'see' has the same positional variants as the 'bee' series.

Examples: ثانی = saanii; کثرت = kasrat;

اکثر = aksar

7.2. 'baRii hee' has the same positional variants as the 'jiim' series. Examples: حال = haal; حج = haj;

بحث = bahs, bahas

7.3. 'zaal' is a non-conductor and belongs to the 'daal' series.

Examples: کاغذ = kaaGaz; ذات = zaat

مذاق = mazaaq.

7.4. 'swaad' and 'zwaad' are connectors. Their initial and medial shapes are as follows: صـ and ضـ . Note the 'Šoošah' after the head of the letter; it must be written in all initial and medial occurrences. Thus صاف = saaf; صرف = sirf; ضرور = zaruur; محض = mahez; قبضہ = qabzaa.

7.5. 'tooee' and 'zooee' are connectors and written full in all positions. Examples: طاقت = taaqat; 1خط = xat; ظرف = zarf.

7.6. 'ain' has the same variants as 'Gain', and differs only in the lack of a superscript dot. Examples: عورت = aurat; عرف = urf; جمع = jamaa; شروع = Šuruu; معنی = maanii.

In Arabic, 'ain' was a laryngeal stop; in Urdu its pronunciation differs in different positions and is mostly unpredictable. However, it is never pronounced as a laryngeal, except perhaps by an Arabicist; though sometimes in literate speech it may be pronounced in certain words as a glottal stop. More commonly the following rules hold true:

1. At the beginning of a word 'ain' is similar to 'alif', i. e., indicates an initial vowel; a short one, if by itself; or a long one, if followed by 'alif', 'yee' or 'waaoo'. Examples:

عبد = abd; عسرت = usrat; عید = iid;
عام = aam; عورت = aurat.

2. Medially it may act, like 'hamzah', as a marker between two vowels. Such words are pronounced commonly with a vowel cluster or a diphthong, but in literate speech they may be heard as pronounced with an intervening glottal stop. Examples:

باعث = baa'es or baaes; شعور = ša'uur or šauur.

3. In most cases, however, it is simpler to learn together the pronunciation and the spelling of the word. Examples:

بعد = baad; شعر = šeer; شروع = šuruu;

جمع = jam'a or jamaa; یعنی = yaanii.

Illustrations

tarah	طرح	taraf	طرف	ehkaam	احکام
hukm	حکم	saaheb	صاحب	sirf	صرف
haalat	حالت	mazhab	مذہب	hissaa	حصّہ
faaedaa	فائدہ	ciiz	چیز	waGairaa	وغیرہ
kaaGaz	کاغذ	zamiin	زمین	baad	بعد
ijaazat	اجازت	zaat	ذات	maaluum	معلوم
šuruu	شروع	xudaa	خدا	taswiir	تصویر
imtihaan	امتحان	hairat	حیرت	zaruur	ضرور
Gussaa	غصّہ	zindagii	زندگی	aam	عام
matlab	مطلب	izzat	عزّت	zaruurat	ضرورت
rahm	رحم	asar	اثر	yaanii	یعنی
tariiqaa	طریقہ	muhabbat	محبّت	suubaa	صوبہ
aksar	اکثر	imaarat	عمارت	farz	فرض
zaraa	ذرا	intizaar	انتظار	maamuulii	معمولی
ilm	علم	raazii	راضی	aql	عقل
fasl	فصل	taaqat	طاقت	namaaz	نماز
hifaazat	حفاظت	xaas	خاص		

Miscellaneous

7.7. In text books for children and in dictionaries where the pronunciation of the word has to be clearly indicated, it is customary in Urdu to use certain diacritics. A few of them, like 'mad' and 'tašdiid', are used in every kind of text and have therefore been discussed earlier. Of the remaining, it will be useful for the student to recognize the following:

1. ـَ : 'zabar', a superscript.
2. ـِ : 'zeer', a subscript.
3. ـُ : 'peeš', a superscript.

List of Vowels and their Related Diacritics

a : 'zabar', over the consonantal letter.
Examples: تَب = tab   کَل = kal

aa : 'alif' and 'alif' with 'mad'
Examples: تا = taa   آ = aa

ai : 'zabar' over the consonantal letter followed by 'baRii yee'
Examples: لَے = lai   بَیل = bail

au : 'zabar' over the consonantal letter followed by 'waaoo'.
Examples: نَو = nau   پَودا = paudaa

i : 'zeer', under the consonantal letter.
Examples: نِب = nib   تِل = til

ii : 'zeer' under the consonantal letter followed by 'chooTii yee'.
Examples: بِیچ = biic   رِیت = riit

u : 'peeš', over the consonantal letter.
Examples: گُم = gum   سُبُک = subuk

uu : 'peeš'. Over the consonantal letter followed by 'waaoo'.
Examples بُو = buu   تھُوک = thuuk

ee : 'baRii yee'.
Examples: لے = lee   cf. لَے = lai
نے = nee   cf. نَے = nai

oo : 'waaoo'.
Examples: ہو = hoo   cf. ہَول = haul
رو = roo   cf. رَو = rau

These diacritics are often used in newspapers and scholarly books to indicate the correct pronunciation of some unfamiliar word or some recent loan from another language.

Another diacritic which may be mentioned here is a superscript called 'jazm'. It indicates that the particular consonantal letter is not followed by any vowel and occurs as syllable final or part of a cluster. Examples:

مِلْنا = milnaa; اُلَٹْنا = ulaTnaa; رَسْم = rasm;
جِسْم = jism

Other Examples: آئِزَن ہاوَر = aaizan haawar;
= kyuuTeks یُورِینِیَم = yuureeniyam; اورِیَنْٹ = ooriyanT

7.8. 'tanwiin' consists of two 'zabar' s and is written over a final 'alif'. The combination is pronounced an. It occurs in some very common adverbs of Arabic origin.

Examples: فوراً = fauran; نسبتاً = nisbatan.

7.9. اَلْ : The Arabic definite article 'al' often occurs as part of the spelling of Arabic loans. Written 'alif laam', it is pronounced variously. It is pronounced al if the word after the definite article starts with any of the following letters:

ا، ب، ج، ح، خ، ع، غ، ف، ق، ک، م، و، ی۔

These letters are classified in Arabic as 'qamrii' letters (Moon letters).

If the word following the definite article starts with any of the following letters, the l of the definite article is not pronounced at all; the preceeding syllable connects with the first consonant of the following word, which is then pronounced double.

These letters are called in Arab 'šamsii' letters (Sun letters).

Examples: عبدالرحمن = abdur-rahmaan; بالکل = bilkul;
القرآن = al-qur'an; ضیاالشمس = ziyaauš-šams;
نجم القمر = najmul-qamar; حفظ الکبیر = hifzul-kabiir;

7.10. Some common punctuations:

ع : Introduces a مصرع (misraa), a hemistisch.

؎ : Introduces a شعر (šeer), a couplet.

۔ : Period

، : Comma

؟ : Question Mark

ؔ : Placed over the تخلّص (taxallus), nom de plume, of poets.

ع۱ : Footnote 1

7.11. Numerals. Urdu numerals are written from left to right.

'Arabic' Numeral	Urdu Numeral	Urdu Spelling	Pronunciation
1	۱	ایک	eek
2	۲	دو	doo
3	۳	تین	tiin
4	۴	چار	caar
5	۵	پانچ	pAAc
6	۶	چھ	chee
7	۷	سات	saat
8	۸	آٹھ	aaTh
9	۹	نو	nau
10	۱۰	دس	das
11	۱۱	گیارہ	gyaaraa

12	۱۲	بارہ	baaraa
0	۰	صفر	sifar

7.12. Sums: In both Pakistan and India decimal coinage system is used. In Pakistan a rupee (21¢) has 100 'paisee'; in India the rupee (21¢) has 100 'nayee paisee'.

The Decimal is written: ٫ .

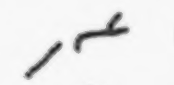
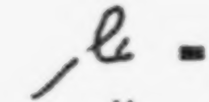
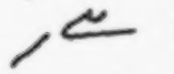
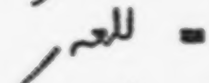
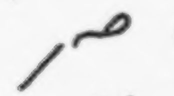
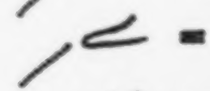
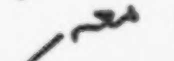
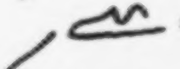
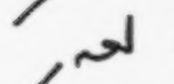
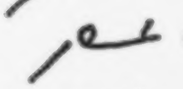
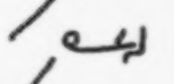
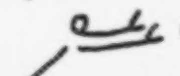
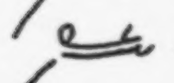
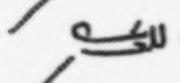
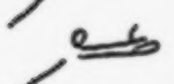
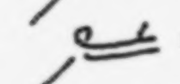
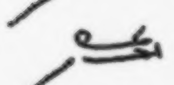
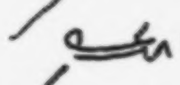
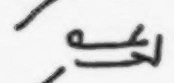
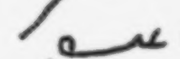
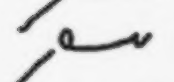
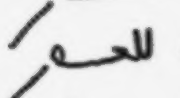
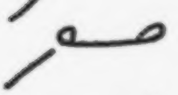
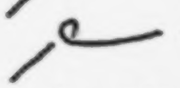
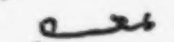
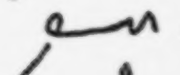
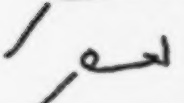
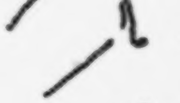
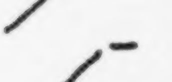
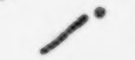
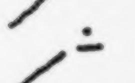
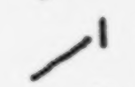
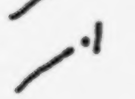
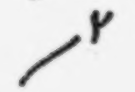
۱٫۰ = Re. 1.00

٫۵۰ = 50 p; 50 np.

٫۰۵ = 5 p; 5 np.

۱٫۱۴ = Rs. 1.14

Before the currency reforms in the two countries, a rupee was divided into 16 annas, or 64 pices. There was also a different system for writing the sums.

	= Re. 1/-		= Rs. 2/-
	= Rs. 3/-		= Rs. 4/-
	= Rs. 5/-		= Rs. 6/-
	= Rs. 7/-		= Rs. 8/-
	= Rs. 9/-		= Rs. 10/-
	= Rs. 11/-		= Rs. 12/-
	= Rs. 13/-		= Rs. 14/-
	= Rs. 15/-		= Rs. 16/-
	= Rs. 17/-		= Rs. 18/-
	= Rs. 19/-		= Rs. 20/-
	= Rs. 30/-		= Rs. 40/-
	= Rs. 50/-		= Rs. 60/-
	= Rs. 70/-		= Rs. 80/-
	= Rs. 90/-		= Rs. 100/-
	= 1/4 anna or 1 pice		= 1/2 anna or 2 pices
	= 3/4 anna or 3 pice		= 1 anna
	= 1 1/4 annas		= 2 annas

سے ۲·/ = Rs. 3 and two annas and three pices

7.13. Dates are written from right to left over the symbol سنہ, 'san', derived from Arabic سَنَةٌ (sanatun), 'year'. Different abbreviations are used for different calendars.

۱۵؍ اگست	August 15
سنہ ۱۹۴۷	1947
سنہ ۱۹۴۷ء	1947 A. D.
سنہ ۱۹۴۷ ق-م-	1947 B. C.
سنہ ۱۹۴۷ھ	1947 A. H.
سنہ ۱۹۴۷ شک	1947 Saka
۱۵؍ اگست سنہ ۱۹۴۷ء	August 15, 1947 A. D.
۲۱؍ اپریل سنہ ۱۹۵۱ء	April 21, 1951 A. D.

Reading Exercises

Meaningful words for passive vocabulary:

عمر	(umr) age	منع کرنا	(manaa karnaa) to prohibit
صبح	(subh, subah) morning	غلطی	(Galtii) fault
فن	(fan) art, skill	شعر	(šeer) couplet
شاعر	(šaa'er) poet	شاعری	(šaa'erii) poetry
غالباً	(Gaaliban) perhaps	عقل	(aql) wisdom
علم	(ilm) learning, knowledge	صورت	(suurat) shape, form
اثر	(asar) effect	سفر	(safar) journey
مطلب	(matlab) meaning, sense	خط	(xat) letter
لفظ	(lafz) word	حرف	(harf) letter of the alphabet

Meaningful words for active vocabulary:

صاف	(saaf) clean	صرف	(sirf) only
کی طرف	(-kii taraf) toward	کی طرح	(-kii tarah) in the manner of, like

عام	(aam) common	خاص	(xaas) special
آم	(aam) mango fruit	عورت	(aurat) woman
ضرورت	(zaruurat) necessity	ضروری	(zaruurii) necessary
کے بعد	(-kee baad) after	فوراً	(fauran) immediately
بعض	(baaz) a few, some	کاغذ	(kaaGaz) paper
شروع کرنا	(šuruu karnaa) to begin (travel)	صاحب	(saahab) Sir, etc.
ذات	(zaat) caste	انتظار	(intizaar) wait, waiting
مذہب	(mazhab) religion	اکثر	(aksar) often

APPENDIX A

The foregoing pages provide the basic information about the Urdu script. As in English so in Urdu, it is extremely important to learn the spelling of the word along with its meaning.

Below we give all the letters in their proper alphabetical order. A student would do well in learning this order and the names as early as possible; this will help him in using the glossary and making sure of the correct spelling of words.

Letter	Name	Sound
ا	alif	aa, etc.
ب	bee	b
پ	pee	p
ت	tee	t
ٹ	Tee	T
ث	see	s
ج	jiim	j
چ	cee	c
ح	baRii hee	h
خ	xee	x
د	daal	d
ڈ	Daal	D
ذ	zaal	z
ر	ree	r
ڑ	Ree	R
ز	zee	z
ژ	žee	ž
س	siin	s

Letter	Name	Sound
ش	šiin	s
ص	swaad	s
ض	zwaad	z
ط	tooee	t
ظ	zooee	z
ع	ain	', etc.
غ	Gain	G
ف	fee	f
ق	qaaf	q
ک	kaaf	k
گ	gaaf	g
ل	laam	l
م	miim	m
ن	nuun	n
و	waaoo	w, etc.
ہ	chooTii hee	h
ھ	doo-cašmii hee	aspiration
ء	hamzah	
ی	chooTii yee	y, etc.
ے	baRii yee	y, etc.

Note: 'hamzah', 'chooTii' and baRii yee' are given one common entry in dictionaries.

The chart below gives the different positional variants of some of the significantly different letters.

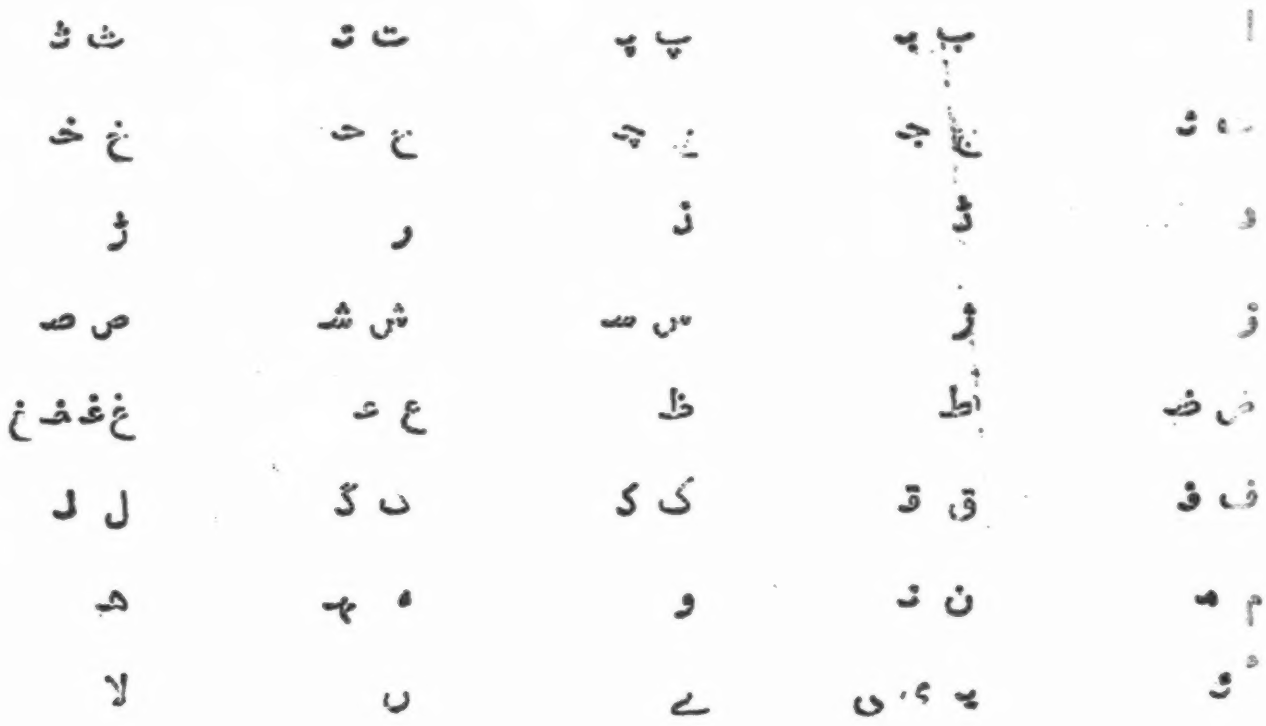
حروف	ـا	ـب	ـج	ـد	ـر	ـو	ـی	ـے	پ-ل	ک-
پ	پا	پب	پج	پد	پر	پو	پی	پے	پپل	کپج
ج	جا	جب	جج	جد	جر	جو	جی	جے	پجل	کجج
د	دا	دب	دج	دد	در	دو	دی	دے	پدل	کدج
ر	را	رب	رج	رد	رر	رو	ری	رے	پرل	کر
س	سا	سب	سج	سد	سر	سو	سی	سے	پسل	کسج
ص	صا	صب	صج	صد	صر	صو	صی	صے	پصل	کصج
ع	عا	عب	عج	عد	عر	عو	عی	عے	پعل	کعج
ف	فا	فب	فج	فد	فر	فو	فی	فے	پفل	کفج
ک	کا	کب	کج	کد	کر	کو	کی	کے	پکل	ککج
ل	لا	لب	لج	لد	لر	لو	لی	لے	پلل	کلج
م	ما	مب	مج	مد	مر	مو	می	مے	پمل	کمج
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	ہج	ہد	ہر	ہو	ہی	ہے	پہل	کہج

APPENDIX B

In the preceding pages we discussed the 'nasta'liiq' style of Urdu. That style is used in the majority of Urdu publications. However, there is also a 'nasx' style, which is used in all kinds of type-printing, as contrasted with litho-printing which uses 'nasta'liiq'. Except for certain linear effects there is not much difference between the two styles.

Urdu typewriters use a variety of 'nasx', and have certain other features which should be pointed out; though none is a major departure from the norm of 'nasta'liiq' already discussed. The main thing to be noted is that the restriction on the number of keys in typewriters has required that the positional variants of letters be kept to a minimum.

Below is a chart of the Urdu alphabet in 'nasx' type, with all the positional variants allowed on the typewriter.



1. Most of the connectors, including the 'bee' series and 'kaaf' and 'gaaf' have only two variants; one for the initial and medial occurrence, and one for the final and independent.

2. The non-connectors have only one shape.

3. 'chooTii hee' has no special initial variant; instead 'doo-cašmii hee' is used in that position. 'doo-cašmii hee' also indicates aspiration after consonantal letters; after a connector there is no ambiguity, since there is a separate medial shape of 'chooTii hee' on the typewriter, but after a non-connector there can be some confusion; though again the immediate, as well as the larger, context will no doubt clarify the matter. Thus 'doo-cašmii hee' indicates: (1) initial *h*; (2) medial *h* after a non-connector as in *rahnaa*; (3) aspiration, after both connectors and non-connectors. 'chooTii hee' has only two variants; one occurs medially after a connector, the other finally as well as independent.

4. The last symbol in the chart is a combination of 'laam' and 'alif', pronounced *laa*. It is used in type more for an aesthetic purpose than any functional need.

5. There are fewer punctuations in type; e. g., no '?'.

Below we give some individual words as well as some sentences in the two different styles; the column on the right gives the 'nasx' type, the column on the left presents hand-written 'nasta'liiq'.

آپ اپنا لابھ لچک

بچنا تیزی، گدّا ھرا

شبنم صورت جلیبی سچ

کہنا بھاری، دھلی دھن

نہر کھیے جائیے نئی

کل کالا بگلا پلکیں

وجہ یہ کہہ وہ

بدلی برقع بسنا جلسہ

آپ کو ان سے ملنا چاھیے-

مجھے کچھ کتابوں کی ضرورت تھی-

آپ نے کیا کہا- کچھ بھی تو نھیں-

وہ لاھور سے کب آئیں گے-

کیونکہ بارش ھونے والی ھے اس لئے-

آپ اپنا لابھ لچک

بچنا تیز گدّا ہرا

شبنم صورت جلیبی سچ

کہنا بھاری دھلی دھن

نہر کہیے جائے نئی

کل کالا بگلا پلکیں

وجہ یہ کہہ وہ

بدلی برقع بسنا جلسہ

آپ کو ان سے ملنا چاہیے -

مجھے کچھ کتابوں کی ضرورت تھی -

آپ نے کیا کہا - کچھ بھی تو نہیں -

وہ لاہور سے کب آئیں گے -

کیونکہ بارش ہونے والی ہے اس لئے -

GRAMMAR

1.

woo laRkaa hai	He is a boy.
woo laRkii hai	She is a girl.
mãĩ laRkii hũũ	I am a girl.
aap aurat hãĩ	You are a woman.

The above exemplify the most common of subject-predicate type sentences in Urdu. They are equivalent to the English "equational" or "copulative" sentences, i.e., of the type "A is B". The above equational sentences can be shown to consist of two parts.

Subject	Predicate
woo	laRkaa hai
mãĩ	laRkii hũũ

The predicate itself, in these cases, consists of a predicative complement, [laRkaa; laRkii], and a verbal auxiliary, [hai; hũũ]. Verbal auxiliaries are members of the "equational" paradigm of the verb [hoonaa].

2. [hoonaa]: "to be; to become". Beside its regular verbal paradigm which will be discussed in the sections on verbs, [hoonaa] has two other sets of forms which we refer to as its equational paradigm and which act as verbal auxiliaries. [hoonaa] is the only verb to have a separate set of forms for this purpose; there are, however, other verbs, such as [rahnaa] or [nikalnaa], whose participle forms often occur as auxiliaries in equational sentences.

3. The two sets of auxiliaries are: (1) past auxiliaries, and (2) present auxiliaries. The past auxiliaries help describe an achieved state considered to have existed

before the speech act and now no longer existant. The present auxiliaries describe an achieved state which may have begun in in the past but which did not come to an end before the speech act, instead continues to be true even now. This distinction of terminated versus co-existant is not carried into the future, which is generally considered in Urdu to be a matter of presumption and possibility. As the latter would also mean reference to a non-achieved state, the regular future or subjunctive forms of [hoonaa] with the implied sense of a "process" of some kind, can be used and are used in equational sentences. These would be given later on.

4. Past Auxiliaries:

thaa	masculine, singular
thii	feminine, singular
thee	masculine, plural
thĩĩ	feminine, plural

5. Present Auxiliaries:

hũũ	first person, singular; [mãĩ]
hoo	second person, informal; [tum]
hai	non first-person, singular; [tuu; woo]
hãĩ	plural; [ham; aap; woo]

6. With reference to present auxiliaries it should be noted that only the first person singular and the second person informal forms are unambiguous. The pronominal forms they go with are given in square brackets. The endings [-ũũ] and [-oo] will be found to occur in other verbal forms with the same unambiguous reference.

Present auxiliaries show agreement with the subject for person and number, while past auxiliaries show agreement for gender and number, but not for person.

7. The grammatical category of number, in Urdu, includes singular and plural. With reference to nouns, as would be shown later, this distinction is simply a matter of the actual number: "one" versus "more-than-one". With reference to pronouns and verbs, however, the case is different. In both instances the category of number is employed simultaneously with the category of person, in which case other distinctions also become operative. As these contrasts are directly connected with individual pronominal forms they are discussed with them in detail in later sections. (See Section 22 ff.). We can, however, mention here that while singular auxiliaries (and verbal forms) will always have a non-plural subject, the plural auxiliaries (and verbal forms) can have both plural and non-plural subjects, with the qualification that such a non-plural subject be some human being toward whom the speaker feel respect and veneration. This latter, i.e., the use of plural verbal forms with singular subjects, is referred to as the "honorific" use of the plural.

woo acchaa hai	He is good. ("He" would refer here to someone with whom the speaker can be informal and need not show special politeness.)
woo acchee hãĩ	He is good. ("He" would refer here to someone toward whom the speaker wants to show courtesy.)

It is evident that in isolated sentences this honorific use of the plural can cause ambiguity: [woo acchee hãĩ] can mean "They are good". But this kind of ambiguity would be lost in larger context.

There are no special honorific plural forms in Urdu.

8. With reference to subject-predicate type sentences it should be noted that Urdu does not require the use of "expletive" words, such as in English "there" or "it", to complete a sentence. The following are all complete Urdu sentences.

kitaabẽẽ hãĩ?	Are there any books?
eek saRak thii	There was a road.
wahãã bahot loog hãĩ	There are a lot of people there.
bahot muškil thaa	It was very difficult.

9. Nouns: Urdu nouns show two categories of gender, two categories of number, and three cases. These distinctions are the bases of nominal inflection in Urdu. For syntactical relationships we may discover later other distinctions -- such as abstract vs. non-abstract, or mass nouns vs. countable nouns -- but these will be discussed in the later relevant sections on verbal constructions.

Urdu nouns are either masculine or feminine. Those things which have a natural gender are assigned that very gender. The gender of other things, however, has to be learnt. Sometimes the category of feminine gender may express diminutiveness, but it is not always true or predictable. There are, at the same time, a few words which may be masculine or feminine depending on where the speaker is from, or what his background has been. It used to be that several nouns which were masculine in Eastern U.P., Oudh, Bihar, etc. were considered feminine in Delhi and the area influenced by its speech. Nowadays, however, with the migration of people from India to Pakistan and vice-versa, and with the available means of mass education and communication, such areal distinctions would be hard to pin down. A similar disagreement may be found in case of some loan words from both

European and non-European languages. This does not mean that there are no formal markers of gender in Urdu. There are quite a few, and the important ones will be discussed below, as well as in the section on Perso-Arabic elements.

10. There are two categories of number: singular and plural. It may be mentioned here that though this distinction of singular vs. plural is used in connection with adjectives and verbs, too, it is only in the case of nouns that it is exclusively a matter of the number of things involved. With adjectives and verbs a further consideration of politeness versus informality also comes in.

The three cases are *vocative*, i.e., when the noun forms a complete utterance in itself and no predicate of any kind is either indicated or implied; *direct* i.e., when the noun is part of a sentence, but occurs without any postposition; *oblique*, i.e., when the noun is either functioning as an adverb or is followed by a postposition. In vocative case, a noun may be preceded by any one of the several exclamations, such as [ee], [oo], [am[illegible]], [ajii], etc. The function of the vocative case is self-evident; the function of the other two cases will be discussed in later sections.

Urdu nouns are given in our glossary, as in all dictionaries, in their citation forms: direct, singular. In their various functions they will be inflected for number and case according to the type of declension they belong to. The four types of noun declensions are as follows.

11. *Marked masculine*: A large number of Urdu nouns are pronounced in their citation forms as ending in the long vowel [-aa], which may be indicated in the script by either the letter [alif] or the letter [chooTii hee]. Examples: laRkaa] "boy"; [raastaa] "path".

laRkaa, raastaa	direct, singular
laRkee, raastee	oblique, singular
laRkee, raastee	vocative, singular
laRkee, raastee	direct, plural
laRkõõ, raastõõ	oblique, plural
laRkoo, raastoo	vocative, plural

The few nouns, such as [raajaa], [daadaa], which end in [-aa] but do not follow the above declension will have to be learnt as exceptions, and will be treated as unmarked masculine nouns. Also, all personal names are considered as unmarked nouns, either masculine or feminine.

12. Marked feminine: A large number of Urdu feminine nouns end in their citation forms in the long vowel [-ii], indicated in the script by the letter [chooTii yee]. Example: [laRkii] "girl".

laRkii	direct, singular
laRkii	oblique, singular
laRkii	vocative, singular
laRkiyãã	direct, plural
laRkiyõõ	oblique, plural
laRkiyoo	vocative, plural

It should be borne in mind that the endings [-aa] [-ii] are not in themselves definite indicators of gender. There are many nouns ending in [-aa] which are feminine, just as there are several masculine nouns ending in [-ii]. The terms marked masculine and marked feminine primarily refer to the above two distinct types of declension. At the same time it must be noted that the native speakers do use these two endings as a guide to decide the gender of loan words from other languages.

13. Unmarked masculine: Examples: [mard] "man"; [aadmii] "man"; [raajaa] "king".

mard, aadmii, raajaa	direct, singular
mard, aadmii, raajaa	oblique, singular
mard, aadmii, raajaa	vocative, singular
mard, aadmii, raajaa	direct, plural
mardõõ, aadmiyõõ, raajaaõõ	oblique, plural
mardoo, aadmiyoo, raajaaoo	vocative, plural

14. Unmarked feminine: Examples: [aurat] "woman"; [meez] "table".

aurat, meez	direct, singular
aurat, meez	oblique, singular
aurat, meez	vocative, singular
aurtẽẽ, meezẽẽ	direct, plural
aurtõõ, meezõõ	oblique, plural
aurtoo, meezoo	vocative, plural

(The change from [aurat] to [aurt-], or from [aadmii] to [aadmiy-], is not part of the morphological suffix but is governed by the phonological details of these words.)

15. There are some unmarked masculine nouns, e.g., [doost] "friend", [mehmaan] "guest", which because of their meaning can refer to men as well as women. These are declined not differently from the other unmarked masculine nouns. However, if their referent is feminine, they will either occur with a preceding adjective, which will make the gender clear, or as adjectives themselves, with some following noun.

meeraa doost aayaa	My friend (masc.) came.
meerii doost aaii	My friend (fem.) came.
mehmaan aurtẽẽ aaĩĩ	The female guests came.

16. Another thing that should be pointed out here is the fact that the original Arabic and Persian plurals of the nouns borrowed from these languages, are never inflected in Urdu. They remain unchanged before postpositions and also in the vocative case.

[haakim] "ruler" :	[haakim-see] [caar haakim] [caar hukkaam] [caar haakimõõ-see] [caar hukkaam-see]
[saahab] "gentleman" :	[saahab-see] [un saahabõõ-see] [un saahabaan-see] [saahabaan aaee]

In the case of loan words from languages other than Persian and Arabic, we find that the original plural forms are never used in Urdu. Thus, though words like "radio" and "train" are part of the everyday vocabulary, their plurals (radios, trains) are never used. As for such words as "fees" and "matches" ([fiis], [maacis]), they are considered singular in Urdu and not plural, and are inflected in Urdu like other unmarked feminine nouns.

[laRkee-kii fiis]	the boy's fees
[laRkõõ-kii fiisẽẽ]	the boys' fees

17. The infinitive forms of all verbs also occur as masculine nouns; they, however, occur only either in the direct, singular, or the oblique, singular. They never occur in the plural.

un-kaa jaanaa	his going
un-kee jaanee-mẽẽ	in his going
jaanee-kee liyee	in order to go
jaanaa caahtaa hũũ	I want to go.

18. There are some common suffixes for noun derivation which, if kept in mind, will help the student in recognizing the meaning of the word as well as its gender.

-waT : added to causative stems; forms feminine abstract nouns.

dikhaawaT	show, appearance
banaawaT	form, shape

-oo : added to causative stems; forms masculine abstract nouns.

bacaaoo	defence
bahaaoo	flow

-ii : added to causative stems; forms feminine abstract nouns.

laRaaii	war
paRhaaii	studying

-ii : added to double-causative stems; forms feminine abstract nouns meaning "wages for getting the act done."

karwaaii	wages for the work
banwaaii	cost of construction

-pan : added to nouns and adjectives; forms masculine nouns.

niilaapan	bluishness
paagalpan	madness
bacpan	childhood

-haT : added to adjectives and simple verbal stems; forms feminine nouns.

ciknaahaT	greasiness
ghabraahaT	worry

-ii : added to nouns, adjectives and simple verbal stems; forms feminine nouns, usually abstract in meaning.

coorii	theft
acchaaii	goodness
boolii	speech; bid

-in : added to masculine nouns; forms feminines of the same.

maalin	gardener's wife
bhikaarin	beggar woman

There are a few more endings for noun derivation which will be discussed in the section on Perso-Arabic elements in Urdu.

19. There is, however, one more very common derivational suffix which should be discussed here in greater detail. This is the ending [-waalaa], which is most commonly added to nouns (including infinitives) in their oblique case forms. The resultant substantive forms are inflected both as nouns and as adjectives.

ghar-waalaa	head of the household, husband
ghar-waalii-see	with the mistress of the house or the wife
baajee-waalee-koo	to the person with the musical instrument
jaanee-waalõõ-koo	to those who go
pakaanee-waalõõ-kee	of those who cook

It can, however be added to adjectives, which will remain in grammatical agreement with the head of the adjectival class. For example, from [acchii kitaab] we can get [acchii-waalii kitaab]. The new adjectival compound does not basically change the meaning; it is only more colloquial, and can be said to emphasize the attempt on the part of speaker to identify the book in question as "the good book" or "the book which is good." Similar adjectival compounds can be formed by adding this suffix to adverbs. For example, [yahãã-waalii kitaab] "the book which was here," [saRak-par-waalii baat] "the matter we discussed on the street." It may be emphasized here that generally such constructions will not be found in standard texts, except in stories with realistic dialogues.
More examples:

baazaar-waalaa khaanaa	the food brought from the market
ghar-kee paas-waalii dukaan	the shop near the house
aanee-waalõõ-nee kahaa	Those who came, said.
jaanee-waalee calee gayee	Those who were going have left.

These forms in their nominal declension do not occur in the feminine plural, direct or oblique. Thus, instead of [jaanee-waaliyãã] we will have [jaanee-waalii laRkiyãã] or some other appropriate phrase.

20. There is, furthermore, another very common construction in which an infinitive followed by the appropriate form of [-waalaa] occurs as predicative complement. This is translated differently from the phrases discussed above, namely as "X is [was] [will be] etc. about to do the act denoted by the infinitive." Examples:

gaaRii jaanee-waalii hai	The train is about to leave.
suuraj nikalnee-waalaa thaa	The sun was about to appear.
gaaRii too ab chuuTnee-waalii hoogii	The train must be about to leave now.
haamid saahab boolnee-waalee hii thee ki...	Mr. Hamid was about to speak when...

The above latter usage is common in both the colloquial and the standard written. This is often referred to as the "inceptive" usage of the infinitive.

21. Pronouns: In the following sections we shall discuss only the personal pronouns and the demonstrative pronouns; other pronominal forms shall be discussed after some discussion of adjectives.

22. Personal Pronouns: The following are the various personal pronouns of Urdu in their direct case forms.

mãĩ	1st person, singular
ham	1st person, plural
tuu	2nd person, singular, intimate
tum	2nd person, informal
aap	2nd person, polite
woo	3rd person

Some of the above forms need further explanation, but one general remark can be made here: the personal pronouns show no distinction for gender.

23. [tuu]: This pronoun is used for God, for little children, as an expression of endearment, and as an expression of contempt, depending upon the context. It requires singular agreement in the verb, thus

tuu hai	Thou art.

The unitarianism of Islam requires that God should be addressed in the singular, hence the use of [tuu]. Otherwise it is not commonly used.

24. [tum]: This is the most commonly used form for addressing equals and also those who are younger or inferior in age and class. However, in using this form with one's equals, it should be borne ii mind that it anticipates some state of informal relationship with them. It won't be used, for example, with an equal who is not fairly well known to the speaker. Thus, professional colleagues and people who know each other but are not on very intimate terms would use the more polite form [aap], which will be discussed in the next section.

[tum] can refer to one person as well as to more than one. Grammatically, it is plural, i.e., it requires plural agreement in the verb. Thus

tum hoo	you are
tum gayee	You (masculine) went.
tum gayĩĩ	You (feminine) went.
tum jaatee thee	You (masculine) used to go.

In equational sentences, however, if the predicative complement is a masculine noun, that noun will always be in the plural. If, however, the predicative complement is a feminine noun, it can be either singular or plural, depending upon the context.

tum laRkee hoo	You are a boy. You are boys.
tum laRkii hoo	You are a girl.
tum laRkiyãã hoo	You are girls.

Cf.

tum acchee hoo	You are well. (Masculine, singular or plural.)

tum acchii hoo	You are well. (Feminine, singular or plural.)

25. [aap]: It expresses politeness. Grammatically, it is plural, but in equational sentences it has the same restrictions as [tum]. Thus

aap gayee	You went. (Masculine, singular or plural.)
aap gayĩĩ	You went. (Feminine, singular or plural.)
aap laRkee hãĩ	You are a boy. You are boys.
aap laRkii hãĩ	You are a girl.
aap laRkiyãã hãĩ	You are girls.
aap acchee hãĩ	You are well. (Masculine, singular or plural.)
aap acchii hãĩ	You are well. (Feminine, singular or plural.)

26. [woo]: As a personal pronoun, [woo] is the only direct case form to refer to 3rd person, with no differentiation for gender or number. In other words, in its direct case function, [woo] means "he, she, it" and also "they". Grammatically, it can be either singular or plural, depending upon the context.

woo hai	he is, she is, it is
woo hãĩ	they are
woo laRkaa hai	He is a boy.
woo laRkee hãĩ	They are boys.
woo laRkii hai	She is a girl.
woo laRkiyãã hãĩ	They are girls.

woo acchaa hai	He is good.
woo acchee hãĩ	They are good.(Masculine)
woo acchii hai	She is good.
woo acchii hãĩ	They are good. (Feminine)
woo gayee	They went. (Masculine)
woo gayĩĩ	They went.(Feminine)

We can see from the above examples that the ambiguity regarding the gender is variously resolved: by the context, by the agreement in the predicative complement, or by the agreement in the finite verb form. A simple sentence, [woo laRkii hai], will always be translated as "She is a girl." If, in all unlikelihood, one did want to say "He is a girl", one would have to say in Urdu [woo too laRkii hai]. The context and the use of [too], a strong emphasis marker, would leave one's intentions unambiguous.

There is, however, a more important thing to note about [woo]. We saw in the discussion of [tum] and [aap] that in Urdu a distinction is made between "informal" and "polite". This concept of "politeness", as we know, is very important in Urdu, and it is extended to sentences with a third person reference, too. In such cases a plural form of the verb will be used to indicate "politeness", even if the subject in actuality is in the singular. The personal pronoun [woo], in its direct case form, will be used in both "informal" and "polite" situations; only the particulars of the predicate will convey the distinction.

woo acchaa hai	He is good. (Informal)
woo acchee hai	He is good. (Polite)
woo acchee hai	They are good.
woo acchii hai	She is good. (Informal)
woo acchii hai	She is good. (Polite)
woo acchii hai	They (feminine) are good.

In the oblique case, as we shall see in the following sections, [woo] does have separate singular and plural forms. In those instances, the plural form will as usual be used to indicate "politeness".

27. Turning to the non-direct case forms of personal pronouns, we can say that there are no vocative case forms. A [tum] or [aap] may be shouted to attract the attention of the person one wants to speak to, but usually some other word or phrase will be used. These are usually referred to by the grammarians as "exclamations". Some of the more common of such "exclamations" are:

ai
aree
oo
aree oo
ajii
amãã
ai saahab
ajii hazrat
ajii saahab
bhaaii saahab

These have been arranged in an order of increasing politeness; [bhaaii saahab] being the most polite phrase to use with a stranger.

28. In the oblique case, the personal pronouns show a kind of differentiation that is not found in the case of nouns. The oblique case forms of the personal pronouns are given below in a column next to the related direct case forms.

Direct Case	Oblique Case
mãĩ	mujh
ham	ham
tuu	tujh
tum	tum
aap	aap
woo (singular)	us
woo (plural)	un

The above oblique case forms occur before all postpositions except [-nee] and [-kaa]; this is quite different from the case with nouns, whose oblique case forms occur before all postpositions. Before the postposition [-nee], all the personal pronouns, except [woo] (plural), occur in their direct case form. [woo] (plural) has a special form [unhõõ] before [-nee]. (There is also another form [inhõõ] whose significance will become apparent after the discussion of demonstrative pronouns.) As for the situation with [-kaa], see the section below on possessive pronouns. But before we do that, it would be useful to bring in some discussion of adjectives.

29. Adjectives: Urdu adjectives can function as modifiers and predicative complements as well as nominals.

30. The use of adjectives as nominals is not very common in Urdu, and is restricted to proverbs and colloquial responses in which the noun modified by the adjective has been omitted. In these functions only the following forms are most common.

1. masculine, direct, singular
2. masculine, direct, plural
3. feminine, direct, singular
4. masculine, oblique, plural

Examples:

eek acchaa deenaa	Give me a good one (something masculine, singular).
eek acchii deenaa	Give me a good one (something feminine, singular).
burõõ-see mat miloo	Don't mix with those who are bad.
naadaanõõ-nee kahaa	The foolish ones said...

Sentences like the following are not possible in Urdu.

acchaa aayaa hai	The good one has come.
acchiyõõ-nee kahaa	The good ones (feminine, plural) said...

Instead we shall have

acchaa laRkaa aayaa hai	The good boy has come.
acchii laRkiyõõ-nee kahaa	The good girls said...

A "proverbial" use of such forms would be:

baRõõ-kii baat baRee hii pahcaanẽẽ	The affairs of great people are known only to the great ones.

In conclusion we can add that grammatically it is possible to use an adjective in its vocative plural form, too. This usage is, however, very rare, and its examples can be found only in public speeches and materials of that kind.

ai naadaanoo	O, you foolish ones...
oo gunah-gaaroo	O, you sinners....

31. In their function as modifiers and predicative complements, Urdu adjectives may belong to one of the two possible declensions.

32. Marked Adjectives: Marked adjectives are listed in lexicons as ending in the letter [alif], the final syllable thus being pronounced [-aa]. There are, furthermore, some very common adjectives which in their written form end in the letter [chooTii hee] -- again, pronounced as [-aa] -- and which also are declined as marked adjectives. (Actually, most of such very common adjectives may be found written with a final [alif].) Other less common adjectives ending in a [chooTii hee] are, however, treated as unmarked adjectives.

Marked adjectives are inflected for number, gender, and case. The inflectional endings are:

-aa	masculine, singular, direct,
-ee	masculine, singular, oblique masculine, plural, direct and oblique
-ii	feminine, singular and plural, direct and oblique.

Examples:

acchaa laRkaa aayaa	The good boy came.
acchee laRkee aaee	The good boys came.
acchii laRkii aaii	The good girl came.
acchii laRkiyãã aaĩĩ	The good girls came.
acchee laRkee-see	with the good boy
acchee laRkõõ-see	with the good boys
acchii laRkii-see	with the good girl
acchii laRkiyõõ-see	with the good girls
laRkaa acchaa hai	The boy is good.
laRkee acchee hãĩ	The boys are good.
laRkii acchii hai	The girl is good.
laRkiyãã acchii hãĩ	The girls are good.

An example of a marked adjective ending in a [chooTii hee] would be the word [gandaa]. A borrowing from Persian, it was originally written with a final [chooTii hee], though now most people write it with an [alif]. The related abstract noun, however, is [gandagii] and not [gandii], which fact confirms its original final [chooTii hee].

gandii kitaab	a dirty book
gandaa laRkaa	a dirty boy
gandee loog	dirty people

33. Unmarked Adjectives: Those adjectives which do not end in their written citation form in an [alif] are not inflected at all in their function as modifiers and predicative complements. Examples:

naadaan laRkaa	ignorant boy
naadaan laRkee	ignorant boys
naadaan laRkii	ignorant girl
naadaan laRkiyãã	ignorant girls
laRkii naadaan hai	The girl is ignorant.
naadaan laRkõõ-see	with ignorant boys
xastaa bískuT	flaky biscuits
xastaa rooTii	flaky bread
beehuudaa aurat	a foolish woman

34. As should be clear from the above examples, while the unmarked adjectives of Urdu remain uninflected before the nouns they modify, the marked adjectives of Urdu do show variant forms and agree in number, gender, and case, with the modified noun. This kind of agreement is very important, especially in the matter of case. Note the following examples.

acchaa laRkaa	the good boy
acchee laRkee-see	with the good boy
acchee laRkee	the good boys
acchee laRkoo-see	with the good boys
acchii laRkiyaa	the good girls
acchii laRkii-see	with the good girl
acchii laRkiyoo-see	with the good girls

35. Among the names for colors, the following very common ones act like unmarked adjectives.

naaranjii	orange
zard	yellow
laal	red
surx	red
safeed	white

While the following are inflected like marked adjectives.

uudaa	violet
haraa	green
kaalaa	black
bhuuraa	brown, tan
niilaa	blue
piilaa	yellow

36. **Cardinal Numbers:** The cardinal numbers are like unmarked adjectives. Furthermore, there are separate words for all numbers from one to one hundred which, despite their sharing some common features, must be memorized. Below we give all the cardinal numbers up to one hundred. (The numbers from eleven to eighteen are written with a final [chooTii hee]. Also see the section in script lessons.)

eek	doo	tiin	caar
pããc	chee	saat	aaTh
nau	das	gyaaraa	baaraa
teeraa	caudaa	pandaraa	soolaa
sattaraa	aTThaaraa	unniis	biis
ikkiis	baaiis	teeiis	caubiis
pacciis	chabbiis	sattaaiis	aTThaaiis
untiis	tiis	iktiis	battiis
tẽẽtiis	caũtiis	pãĩtiis	chattiis
sãĩtiis	aRtiis	untaaliis	caaliis
iktaaliis	bayaaliis	tẽẽtaaliis	cawaaliis
pãĩtaaliis	cheyaaliis	sãĩtaaliis	aRtaaliis
uncaas	pacaas	ikkyaawan	baawan
tirpan	cawwan	pacpan	chappan
sattaawan	aTThaawan	unsaTh	saaTh
iksaTh	baasaTh	tirsaTh	causaTh
pãĩsaTh	cheyaasaTh	saRsaTh	aRsaTh
unhattar	sattar	ikhattar	bahattar
tehattar	cuahattar	pachattar	cheyattar
satattar	aThattar	unnaasii	assii
ikkyaasii	bayaasii	tiraasii	cauraasii
paccaasii	cheyaasii	sattaasii	aTThaasii
nawaasii	nawwee	ikkyaanwee	baanwee
tiraanwee	cauraanwee	paccaanwee	cheyaanwee
sattaanwee	aTThaanwee	ninnaanwee	sau

The numbers after one hundred are made by combining the above forms.

eek sau das	110
aaTh sau baaraa	812

The following numbers are also used

hazaar	thousand
laakh	100,000
karooR	10,000,000

37. Ordinal Numbers: Except for a few initial numbers, ordinals are derived from the cardinal numbers by adding the suffix [-wãã]. Below we give the ordinal forms for numbers from one to twenty. Note the forms for 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4rth, and 6th, and also the forms for numbers from eleven to seventeen in which the [h] indicated in the script is also pronounced, contrary to the practice with their cardinal forms.

pahlaa	duusraa	tiisraa	cauthaa
pããcwãã	chaTaa	saatwãã	aaThwãã
nawãã	daswãã	gyaarhwãã	baarhwãã
teerhwãã	caudhwãã	pandrahwãã	soolhwãã
sattrahwãã	aTThaarwãã	unniiswãã	biiswãã

In contrast with the cardinal numbers, the ordinal numbers are like marked adjectives. In their declension, however, the final syllable remains nasalized.

pahlaa laRkaa	the first boy
pahlii laRkii	the first girl
duusree ghar-see	from the second house
nawĩĩ laRkii	the ninth girl
daswĩĩ kitaab	the tenth book
daswẽẽ laRkee-koo	to the tenth boy
duusree-nee kahaa	the second (masculine) one said
daswĩĩ-nee kahaa	the tenth (feminine) one said

38. Just as other adjectives, the numbers can also be used as nominals.

eek aayaa	one came
doo diijiyee	Give me two.
duusra liijiyee	Take the second.
tiisree-nee kahaa	The third one said...
mãĩ bas tiin-see milaa	I met with only three (of them).

39. Note the fact that in the last example the number [tiin] remains unchanged before a postposition. There is, however, another construction in which a number is used in an "inclusive" sense, meaning "all the three, all the four, etc.". In such constructions, the number has a suffix, [-õõ], added to it. Only the number [doo] is an exception; it takes a suffix [-nõõ]. The resultant forms remain uninflected.

doonõõ laRkee	both the boys
doonõõ laRkiyõõ-see	with both the girls
caarõõ laRkee aaee	All four of the boys came.
doonõõ-nee kahaa	Both of them said...
gyaarahõõ-see	with all the eleven of them

40. There are other words which occur either by themselves or with other numbers to indicate fractions of numbers. Some of the more common are given below.

[cauthaaii]: "one-fourth". [cauthaaii miil]: "quarter of a mile". [cauthaaii kitaab]: "one-fourth of the book".

[sawaa]: When used alone it means "one and a quarter"; followed by other numbers it means "plus a quarter". [sawaa gaz]: "one and a quarter yards". [sawaa tiin]: "three and a quarter".

[DeeRh]: "one and one half". [DeeRh gaz]: "1 and 1/2 yards".

[Dhaaii]: "two and one half". [Dhaaii gaz]: "2 and 1/2 yards".

[saaRhee]: "plus one half"; used with numbers other than "one" and "two". [saaRhee tiin]: "3 and 1/2".

[aadhaa]: "one half". [aadhaa gaz]: "half a yard". [aadhii kitaab]: "half the book". ([aadhaa] is inflected like any other marked adjective; the other words discussed above and below, however, remain uninflected.)

[paun]: "three-quarter of (something)". [paun gaz]: "three-quarter of a yard".

[paunee]: "plus three-quarter". [paunee doo]: "2 and 3/4"; [paunee das]: "10 and 3/4".

41. Demonstrative Pronouns: The following are the demonstrative pronominal forms of Urdu.

Direct Case	Oblique Case
woo "that; those"	us (singular)
	un (plural)
yee "this; these"	is (singular)
	in (plural)

[woo] and [yee] refer to both animate and inanimate things, differentiating only between the proximity or remoteness of the thing or person referred to. There are no hard and fast rules to establish this distinction; in the speech of most speakers, however, it was found that if the thing or person was within the reach of their hands they would use [yee] rather than [woo]. Likewise, if the reference was to something mentioned in the immediately preceding phrase or sentence, they were likely to use [yee].

Note the fact that [woo] and [yee] do not differentiate for number in the direct case; the number distinction is made only in the oblique case. [in], however, does not occur before the postposition [-nee]; instead a special form [inhõõ] is used. (See Section 28)

woo laRkaa hai	He is a boy.
yee laRkii hai	This here is a girl.
yee laRkiyãã hãĩ	These here are girls.
yee acchii hai	This is good.
woo acchii hai	That is good.
us-par	on it, on him, on her, on that

is-par	on it, on him, on her, on this
un-par	on them, on those
in-par	on them, these

42. Demonstrative pronouns can also be used as modifiers.

yee kitaab	this book
woo keelee	those bananas
woo laRkiyãã	those girls
in laRkõõ-see	with these boys
un kitaabõõ-mẽẽ	in those books
us kitaab-mẽẽ	in that book
is laRkee-see	with this boy

43. Possessive Pronouns: Except for [aap], [woo], and [yee], other pronouns have special possessive forms. The following is the complete paradigm. The first column contains the corresponding personal pronoun in its direct case form, the second column gives the possessive pronominal form, and the last column shows the English gloss.

mãĩ	meeraa	my; mine
ham	hamaaraa	our; ours
tuu	teeraa	thy; thine
tum	tumhaaraa	your; yours
aap	aap-kaa	your; yours
woo	us-kaa	his; her; hers; of that
	un-kaa	their; theirs; of them; of those; (also singular, polite)
yee	is-kaa	of this; his; her; hers

in-kaa	of these; their; theirs; of them; (also singular, polite)

All the possessive pronominal forms are inflected as marked adjectives, and occur as both modifiers and predicative complements.

meerii kitaab	my book
yee kitaab meerii hai	This book is mine.
tumhaaraa ghar	your house
aap-kee keelee	your bananas
un-kii laRkiyãã	his daughters
un-kii laRkiyõõ-see	with his daughters
un-kee ghar-mẽẽ	in his house
yee aap-kaa hai	This is yours.

44. [apnaa]: Beside the possessive pronouns mentioned above there is another, [apnaa], which has a kind of reflexive meaning. It is used

1. when the subject and the possessor are one and same;

apnii dukaaṅ jaa-rahaa hũũ	I'm going to my shop.
woo apnee waalid-kee paas gayaa	He went to his father.

2. when, in constructions with perfect participles, the possessor is the same as the noun or pronoun before [-nee];

us-nee mujhee apnaa ghar dikhaayaa	He showed me his house.
tum-nee apnaa kaam kar-liyaa?	Did you do your work?

3. when, in indirect constructions, the possessor is the same as the noun or pronoun before [-koo];

mujhee usee apnee ghar lee-jaanaa caahiyee	I ought to take him to my house.
aap-koo apnii kitaabẽẽ kab caahiyẽẽ	When do you want your books?
usee apnaa nayaa ghar pasand nahĩĩ	He doesn't like his new house.

In some instances there might be cause for ambiguity, but usually it is taken care of by word order and the larger context.

tum-nee usee apnii kitaab jalaatee deekhaa?	Did you see him burning his own book?
Or	Did you see him burning your book?

The larger context will clarify such ambiguities.

Sometimes [apnaa] may occur after a possessive pronoun for added emphasis.

meeraa apnaa kooii ghar nahĩĩ	There is no house of my own.

45. [-kaa] is a postposition and therefore requires that the word preceding it should be in oblique case. It can be used with nouns and noun phrases to form adjectival phrases; the ending will be inflected like marked adjectives to agree with the noun it modifies.

laRkee-kii kitaab	the boy's book
laRkee-kee juutee	the boy's shoes
laRkõõ-kee juutee	the boys' shoes
laRkiyõõ-kaa ghar	the girls' house
cacaa-kaa ghar	the uncle's house

46. As adjectives agree with the modified noun in gender, number, and case, it follows that sometimes changes will have to be made in the entire adjectival phrase to show this kind of agreement.

woo aadmii	that man
But, us aadmii-kaa naam	that man's name
woo acchaa laRkaa	that good boy
But, us acchee laRkee-kii kitaab	that good boy's book
woo acchee laRkee	those good boys
But, un acchee laRkõõ-kaa ghar	the house of those good boys

in muškil sawaalõõ-kee jawaab	answers to these difficult questions
meeree cacaa-kii laRkii	my uncle's daughter
un-kee doost-kee ghar-kaa pataa	the address of his friend's house
Also,aap-kaa yahãã aanaa	your coming here
But, aap-kee yahãã aanee-mẽẽ	in your coming here

47. Pronominal adjectives: In a previous section we have discussed the use of demonstrative pronouns as adjectives. There are several other pronominal forms which may function similarly. These forms can occur immediately before a noun, in which case they are no different from other adjectives; however, when they occur before an adjective which in turn may or may not be followed by a noun, their function is more like what was traditionally termed adverbial: they act as explicators or modifiers of adjectives. (Beside these pronominal forms there are other explicators which we shall discuss later.) These pronominal adjectives can be classified into three groups: demonstratives, interrogatives, and relatives.

48. Demonstrative pronominal adjectives: We have already discussed [yee] and [woo]; following are some more forms. It must be remembered that in this category the distinction of "remote" versus "proximate" is observed. We shall indicate this by referring to [woo] and [yee] respectively.

yee:	aisaa	such; of this kind
	itnaa	this much; these many; so many
woo:	waisaa	such; of that kind
	utnaa	that much; that many; so many

aisii kitaab	a book of this kind
waisii kitaab	a book of that kind

aisii acchii kitaab	such a good book
aisii acchii kitaabẽẽ	such good books
itnee ghar	so many houses
itnii miThaaii	so much candy
utnee acchee laRkee	boys that good

[waisaa] is not so common in written Urdu. When the desired emphasis does not so much refer to "this kind" or "that kind", but rather to a degree of intensity, only [aisaa] is used, even if the thing referred to belongs to the "remote" category. In other words, as explicator only [aisaa] is used.

49. [itnaa] and [utnaa] as adjectives of number occur only before plural nouns and mass nouns. They do not occur before ordinary singular nouns unless a different meaning is implied. (See below.)

itnaa paanii	so much water
utnee laRkee	that many boys

They can, however, occur as explicators before adjectives modifying singular nouns.

itnii acchii kitaab	a book this good
utnaa acchaa ghar	a house that good
itnii acchii kitaabẽẽ	books this good

When [itnaa] and [utnaa] occur before a singular noun which is not a mass noun, they mean "that much part of it".

itnii kitaab paRh-cukaa hũũ	I have read this much of the book.
utnaa ghar tumhaaraa, itnaa meeraa	That much of the house is yours, this part is mine.

50. Interrogative pronominal adjectives: Under this heading we shall discuss four forms, [kyaa], [kaun], [kitnaa], and [kaisaa]. The first two forms, [kyaa] and [kaun], function primarily as pronouns of interrogation, but also occur in adjectival and explicator functions; the last two forms, [kitnaa] and [kaisaa], are adjectives and occur as such or as explicators.

51. [kyaa] is generally translated as "what", but in one of its functions it has no lexical meaning. When it occurs at the beginning of a sentence which has a "yes or no" type intonation, it functions adverbially and serves to indicate in writing that the sentence is not a statement but a "yes or no" type question. (It should be borne in mind that Urdu did not originally have punctuation marks except for a sentence-end dash. The other symbols in use are all borrowed from English.) It is however, not necessary to use [kyaa] in every "yes or no" type question, for this function can be served in spoken language by intonation, and in written language by the punctuation. (In our transcription we have used ? for only such "yes or no" type questions.)

	kyaa kaliim aayaa hai?	Has Kaleem come?
Or	kaliim aayaa hai?	ditto
	kyaa un-kee marnee-kii xabar aap-nee sunii?	Have you heard the news of his death?
Or	un-kee marnee-kii xabar aap-nee sunii?	ditto

(See the section on Intonation for relevant discussion.)

In other sentences, [kyaa] can occur both at the beginning of a sentence and elsewhere in either a nominal or adjectival function, with some kind of lexical meaning.

	kyaa kahaa unhõõ-nee	What did he say?
Or	unhõõ-nee kyaa kahaa	ditto
	kyaa naam hai un-kaa	What's his name?
Or	un-kaa kyaa naam hai	ditto

[kyaa] is not inflected to agree with anything, though it can occur in attributive position. At the same time, no postposition ever occurs after [kyaa] or after a phrase in which [kyaa] occurs as attributive or explicator.

52. As an interrogative pronoun [kyaa] generally refers to inanimate things, though it can in some cases also refer to human beings. In case of the latter, however, [kyaa] carries a meaning different from the usual, and contrasts with [kaun]. Thus, without a given context, [woo kyaa hai] will simple mean "What is that?". But if [woo], in a given context, refers to some human being, the sentence will mean "What is he?", requiring a descriptive answer, such as "He is a doctor" or "He is a student". In that context it will contrast with [kaun]. [woo kaun hai] will mean "Who is he?", a question requiring a restrictive answer -- his name, his geneology -- such as "He is Kaleem" or "He is the doctor".

Another such special use of [kyaa] will be discussed in the section on [kaun].

53. One important thing to bear in mind about [kyaa] is the fact that in interrogative sentences in which [kyaa] would occur as predicative complement, it is more common in Urdu to put it in attributive position before a noun. Thus

un-kaa naam kyaa hai	What's his name?

would usually be found in Urdu as

un-kaa kyaa naam hai.

Similarly,

woo kyaa ciiz hai	What thing is that?
woo kyaa kitaab hai	What book is that?
is-kii kyaa qiimat hai	What is its price?
us-kii kyaa umr hai	What is its age?

54. [kyaa] occurs as an explicator in exclamatory sentences either by itself, or, more often, followed by the particle [hii].

kyaa acchii kitaab hai woo	What a good book that one is!
kyaa hii acchii kitaab hai woo	ditto
yee too kyaa hii acchee ghar hãĩ	What fine houses these are!

55. [kaun] is generally translated as "who" or "which". When occuring by itself as predicative complement it refers only to human beings. Thus [woo kaun hai] will always mean "Who is he?". In attributive position it can occur before inanimate nouns as well as animate.

woo saahab kaun hãĩ	Who is that gentleman?
woo kaun saahab hãĩ	ditto
woo kaun ciiz hai	What thing is that?
woo kaun jaanwar thaa	What animal was that?

As with [kyaa], it is preferred in Urdu to use [kaun] in the attributive position rather than as predicative complement.

[kaun] is inflected for number and case.

kaun	direct, singular and plural
kis	oblique, singular
kinhõõ	oblique, plural; used only before [-nee]
kin	oblique, plural; used elsewhere

Examples:

kaun jaa-rahaa hai	Who is going?
kaun loog aaee hãĩ	Who have come?
kis laRkee-kii kitaab	which boy's book
aap kis-see milee	Who did you meet?
kinhõõ-nee kahaa	Who said?
kin-kii qiimat	price of what things
kin kitaabõõ-kii qiimat	price of what books

56. [kaun] does not occur as an explicator except in sentences which carry "contradictory" intonation.

These sentences imply in meaning to negate completely the very statement that they would have made if they had occured without the interrogatory word and the particular intonation. To take a simple example, [woo giit gaataa hai] means "He sings songs."; but [woo kaun giit gaataa hai], with "contradictory" intonation, will mean "What makes you think he sings songs? He doesn't sing at all.". The particular "contradictory" intonation can be formulated as S2 1 1. Note the sharp rise of pitch and the heavy stress on words like [yee] and [woo] in the subject part of the sentence and the lengthening of their vowels. As often these sentences would carry some pejoritive implication it is possible to use [kyaa] before nouns for human beings and [kaun] before nouns for inanimate things.

woo kyaa aadmii hai	He is not a man.
S2 1 1 1	
woo kaun acchii kitaab hai	That is not a good book
S2 1 1 1 1	at all.
tum bhii kis-see milnee gayee	It was foolish of you to
S2 1 1 1 1	go to see him.
woo kaun bhalee loog hãĩ	They are not good people anyway.

Consider the following sentence.

woo kaun buree loog hãĩ	They are not bad people really.

There is no "pejoritive" implication in this sentence; [kaun] and the particular intonation only suggest a negation of the statement that would have been made without them.

woo kaun aisii xaraab kitaab thii	That wasn't such a bad book, was it?

57. Both as predicative complement and as interrogative adjective, [kaun] can occur with a derivative suffix [saa].

(This is such a common suffix that we are writing it without a hyphen to facilitate its recognition.) The oblique case forms of [kaun] do not occur before [saa]. In some instances, [kaun] and [kaun saa] may differ in meaning; [kaun]: "who?"; [kaun saa] "which one (of the things or people known)?". In other instances they may occur interchangeably. [saa] has variants, [see] and [sii]; and the combination [kaun saa] acts like marked adjectives. The combined form is given preference when reference is to some inanimate noun.

woo kaun hai	Who is he?
woo kaun saa hai	Which one is that?
aap-koo kaun sii kitaab aaahiyee	Which book do you want?
aap-kaa ghar kaun saa hai	Which is your house?
aap kaun see ghar-mee rahtee hãĩk	In which house do you live?

[kaun saa] can be used in "contradictory" sentences.

woo kaun see bhalee loog hãĩ S2 1 1 1 1 1	What makes you think they are fine people?

See Section 75 ff. for further discussion of [saa].

58. [kaisaa]: "of what kind"; acts like marked adjectives.

woo kaisii kitaab hai	What kind of book is that?
woo kitaab kaisii hai	How is that book?
un-koo kaisaa khaanaa pasand hai	What kind of food does he like?
woo kaisee ghar-mẽẽ rahtaa hai	In what kind of house does he live?

It can also act as an explicator in exclamatory sentences.

woo kaisii acchii kitaab hai	What a fine book that one is!
yee kaisee acchee ghar hãĩ	What fine houses these are!

59. [kitnaa]: "how much; how many"; is inflected like marked adjectives. It can occur only with plural and mass nouns.

kitnii kitaabẽẽ	How many books?
kitnee ghar	How many houses?
kitnii miThaaii	How much candy?
kitnii miThaaiyãã	How many different candies?
kitnee laRkõõ-koo	to how many boys
kitnii kitaabõõ-kaa	of how many books
kitnee aaee hãĩ	How many have come?
kitnõõ-nee kahaa	How many said that?

It can also occur as an explicator in exclamatory sentences.

yee kitaab kitnii acchii hai	How good this book is!
yee kitnee acchee ghar hãĩ	How fine these houses are!

60. As must have been noticed, all three forms, [kyaa], [kaisaa], and [kitnaa], lose their interrogative meaning when they occur as explicators; they simply indicate the exclamatory attitude of the speaker. The following three sentences, therefore, do not differ in meaning.

yee kyaa hii acchii kitaab hai	What a fine book this is!
yee kaisii acchii kitaab hai	ditto
yee kitnii acchii kitaab hai	ditto

61. Relative pronominal adjectives: Relative pronominals occur in relative clauses which in turn can occur either before the main clause, embedded within the main clause, or after it. Like the interrogative forms, relative pronominals do not show distinctions of gender, person, and remote versus proximate;

the only agreement observed between relative pronominals and the noun or pronoun referred to is that of number. The direct versus oblique case opposition will depend on the function of the relative pronominal in its clause.

In the following table we have arranged the various demonstrative, interrogative, and relative pronominal forms to show the relationship between them. It must be kept in mind, though, that the relationship between these forms is not always in terms of the reference of the one to the other; often it is simply in terms of the replacement of one by the other within a relative clause.

Demonstratives	Interrogatives	Relatives
yee; woo	kyaa; kaun	joo
is;us	kis	jis
in;un	kin	jin
inhõõ; unhõõ	kinhõõ	jinhõõ
aisaa; waisaa	kaisaa	jaisaa
itnaa; utnaa	kitnaa	jitnaa

62. Within a relative clause, relative pronominals can occur either by themselves -- as subjects or objects of the verb -- or as modifiers. As modifiers, especially when there may be other modifiers preceding the modified noun, relative pronominals occur in various positions. In fact it is quite difficult to describe their relative order of occurrence in spoken Urdu. In written Urdu, however, certain positions are preferred; these we shall describe below.

63. A relative pronominal will occur as a modifier immediately before the modified noun if that noun is not preceded by some other modifier.

joo dukaan yahãã hai acchii hai	The store which is here is good.
joo laRkaa aayaa thaa us-see miliyee	Meet the boy who has come.
jis ghar-mẽẽ hũũ woo acchaa hai	The house in which I am now is good.

64. If, however, the noun in the relative clause is preceded by other modifiers, there are various rules. If the preceding modifier is a demonstrative pronominal, the relative pronominal will always follow it. This is, however, possible only when the demonstrative is in the direct case, i.e., when the modified noun is the subject of the verb in the relative clause.

woo joo laRkaa hai, acchaa hai	That boy there is good.
woo joo kitaab thii, kyaa huii	What happened to that book?
woo joo kitaab hai, us-kaa rang laal hai	That book over there -- its color is red.

The use of a demonstrative in these cases makes the modified noun more specific than it was otherwise.

65. If the preceding modifier is a genitive (possessive) phrase -- [aap-kaa; meeraa], etc. -- the relative pronominal will usually follow the genitive phrase, unless that phrase itself is preceded by a demonstrative, in which case the relative pronominal can occur between the demonstrative and the genitive.

aap-kaa joo doost thaa, us-koo kyaa huaa	What happened to him who was your friend?
meerii joo kitaab thii khoo-gaii	That book of mine -- it got lost.
woo joo aap-kaa doost thaa, us-koo kyaa huaa	That person who was your friend -- what happened to him?

In all the preceding examples, [joo] can occur in spoken Urdu after the modified noun.

woo aap-kaa doost joo thaa...

But in written language, however, the restrictions mentioned above are usually followed.

66. Likewise, if the preceding modifier is a simple adjective, it is preferred in written language not to have the relative pronominal occur between the adjective and the noun, but rather before the adjective.

	joo acchaa doost hai us-koo diijiyee	Give it to him who is a good friend.
	joo burii kitaab thii, khoo gaii	That which was a bad book was lost.
Cf.	joo kitaab burii thii, khoo gaii	The book which was bad was lost.
	jis baRii dukaan-mẽẽ pahlee gaee thee usii-mẽẽ jaaiyee	Go in that big store where you had gone before.
	aap-kee joo acchee doost hãĩ, aaee hãĩ	He who is a good friend of yours, has come.
	woo joo aap-kii acchii kitaab thii, kyaa huii	That good book of yours, what happened to it?

67. There is in Urdu a correlative form, [soo], which can occur in the main clause for added emphasis on whatever is being modified by the relative form. [soo] can occur by itself -- replacing, as if [woo] -- as subject of the main clause, or followed by the noun or pronoun or adjectival phrase which is being referred to in the relative clause. Thus the above examples can be written as follows.

jis baRii dukaan-mẽẽ pahlee gaee thee soo usii-mẽẽ jaaiyee.
woo joo aap-kii acchii kitaab thii soo kyaa huii.
woo joo laRkaa hai soo acchaa hai.
aap-kaa joo doost thaa soo us-koo kyaa huaa.
aap-kee joo acchee doost hãĩ soo woo aaee hãĩ.

[soo] is not inflected. Its use, however, is not so common in modern Urdu, spoken or written, and not at all obligatory, except in appositive clauses in sentences of the type below.

joo kitaab soo phaTii huii	Every book that was there, was torn.
joo aadmii soo paagal	Every man that was there, was mad.

68. The particle [bhii] is used with relative pronominal forms to give the kind of emphasis that "ever" provides in English "whoever; whomsoever; etc."

joo bhii yahãã aaee thee, calee gaee	Whoever had come here, have left.
joo bhii kamraa xaalii hoo, us-mẽẽ baiTh-jaaiyee	Please sit down in whichever is empty.
joo bhii meeree doost thee, sab mar-gaee	Whoever were my friends, they have all died.
aap jis-koo bhii caahẽẽ, dẽẽ	Give it to whomsoever you like.
jis kamree-mẽẽ bhii caahẽẽ baiThẽẽ	Sit in whichever room you like.

Note the fact that with [joo], [bhii] occurs immediately following it, but with oblique case forms, [bhii] occurs after the postposition, in order to emphasize the entire phrase.

69. [jaisaa] may take as its correlative either [waisaa] or some equivalent phrase, such as [usii tarah] or [usii tarah-kaa].

Both [jaisaa] and [waisaa] are inflected like marked adjectives; like them they can also occur in nominal function.

	jaisaa ghar aap-kaa hai, waisaa hii meeraa hai	My house is of just the same type as yours.
Or	jaisaa ghar aap-kaa hai, usii tarah-kaa meeraa hai	ditto
	jaisaa unhõõ-nee kahaa, waisaa mãĩ-nee kiyaa	I did just the way he said.

In shorter sentences, the correlative may be dropped.

jaisaa mãĩ kahtaa hũũ, kiijiyee	Do as I am telling you.
jaisaa bhii mumkin hoo, kiijiyee	Do whatever sort of thing is possible.

70. It is also used with or without an intervening [-kee] (for masculine reference) or [-kii] (for feminine reference), to make adjectival phrases. The noun or pronoun preceding it will be in the oblique. [jaisaa], in every instant, will agree with the noun it modifies or refers to. In some instances it may seem possible to make a distinction of the type: use [-kee] and [-kii] when some similarity has to be indicated between two separate entities, but only [jaisaa] when no two separate entities are involved.

woo raam-kee jaisaa bhalaa hai	He is kind in the same way as Ram.
raam jaisaa caalaak aadmii aur Galtii karee	That such a clever person as Ram should make a mistake...

In ordinary speech and writing, however, this distinction is not always maintained.

woo too un-kee jaisaa bhalaa nahĩĩ	He is not good like him.

	un-kee jaisaa aadmii milnaa too muškil hai	It is difficult to find a man like him.
	un-kee jaisee caalaak aadmii-koo kyaa fikr	What can a clever person like him has to worry?
	haathii jaisaa badan	a body like an elephant's
Or	haathii-kee jaisaa badan	ditto
	haathii jaisee aadmii-see	with an elephant-like man
	šeernii-kii jaisii aurat	a tigress-like woman
	aap-kii jaisii bhalii laRkii	a nice girl like you

[jaisaa] can also occur in an indiomatic construction like [jaisaa woo waisaa us-kaa bhaaii]: "Like him, like his brother."

71. [jitnaa] usually occurs without any correlative.

unhõõ-nee jitnii kitaabẽẽ mããgii thĩĩ, mãĩ-nee dee-dĩĩ	I gave him as many books as he wanted.
jitnii miThaaii caahiyee, lee-liijiyee	Take as much candy as you need.

When [utnaa] or [us qadar] do occur as its correlative, they give a kind of restrictive sense to the noun they modify or refer to. Often they may be followed by the particle [hii], to give further emphasis to this restrictive sense. On the other hand, [bhii] can follow [jitnaa] to make it more un-restricted.

	jitnii bhuuk hoo, utnii miThaaii liijiyee	Take candy to suit your hunger.
	jitnii bhuuk hoo, utnii hii miThaaii liijiyee	Take candy only to the extent of your hunger.
Or	jitnii bhuuk hoo, usii qadar miThaaii liijiyee	ditto
Cf.	jitnii bhii miThaaii wahãã hoo, lee-liijiyee	Take all the candy that is there.

72. Indefinite pronominal adjectives: [kooii] and [kuch] act both as pronouns and as adjectives but, as they do

not parallel formally with the pronominal adjectives discussed above, they are discussed here as a separate group. [kooii] means "some particular one; any; anyone"; [kuch] means "some". [kooii] refers less to the number of things or persons, and more to their essential or particular nature. It can be used, therefore, with both singular and plural nouns. [kuch] refers primarily to quantity, and is used mostly with mass nouns and plurals of countable nouns. If used with the singular form of a countable noun, [kuch] means "some part of it". When occuring by themselves as indefinite pronouns, [kooii] means "some person", and [kuch] means "something". With negative particles, [na; nahĩĩ], they serve to indicate complete absence or negation. The oblique case form of [kooii] is [kisii]; [kuch] does not have a separate oblique case form, and usually does not occur directly before a postposition. The oblique case form of [kooii], i.e., [kisii], does not occur before plural nouns.

us kamree-mẽẽ kooii nahĩĩ	There is no one in that room.
us kamree-mẽẽ kuch mahĩĩ	There is nothing in that room.
baahar aap-kee kooii doost aaee hãĩ	Some friend of yours is outside.
baahar aap-kee kuch doost aaee hãĩ	Some friends of yours are outside.
un-mẽẽ-see kooii kitaabẽẽ aap-koo pasand hõõtoo lee-liijiyee	If you like any books those, take them.

[kuch] cannot be used in the above sentence. In the following sentence, on the other hand, [kuch] can occur but only as an explicator, retaining its emphasis on quantity.

	kuch acchii kitaab diijiyee	Give me a somewhat better book.
Cf.	kooii acchii kitaab diijiyee	Give me some good book,

kyaa kuch kaam xatm kiyaa?	Did you finish some of the work?
kisii-see puuchiyee	Ask someone.
un-mẽẽ-see kuch-nee kahaa	Some of them said...
un-mẽẽ-see kisii-nee kahaa	Someone among them said...
un-mẽẽ-see kuch loogõõ-nee kahaa	Some people among them said..

Though it is possible to say,

un loogõõ-mẽẽ-see kuch-nee kahaa,

preference is given to the previous version.

73. There are not separate equivalents for the English definite and indefinite articles, "a" and "the". In cases where English "a" is really a number, "one", Urdu uses [eek], otherwise the noun occurs by itself. [eek] is never used in general statements like "a man is never...", etc.; in such sentences the subject occurs either by itself or preceded by [kooii].

Depending upon the particular context, English "the" would be translated into Urdu by [yee], [woo], or some appropriate relative pronoun. Often the idea would be expressed by using the postposition [-koo] after the noun, if that noun happens to be the direct object. In other cases, however, it would have no overt equivalent in Urdu.

eek laRkee-nee kahaa	a boy said
laRkee-nee kahaa	the boy said
kamree-mẽẽ eek laRkaa aur eek laRkii thee. laRkee-nee kahaa	There was a boy and a girl in the room. The boy said...
kooii acchii kitaab hai?	Do you have a good book?
joo laRkaa kal aayaa thaa	The boy who had come yesterday...
laRkee-koo bataaoo	Tell the boy...

74. Pronominal adjectives as well as other adjectives can occur doubled to emphasize the "distributive" aspect of the plural noun they modify, a function similar to that of the phrase "each and every" in English. A double adjective does not imply intensification, but rather enumeration. The things are "good" not only cumulatively but also singly. (On the other hand, a double adverb in Urdu does carry a sense of intensification.) Only one double adjective can occur in a series.

woo sab acchii achhii ciizẽẽ lee-gayaa	He carried away all the fine things.
jitnaa jitnaa aap loogõõ-see hoo-sakee	As much as each one of you can do...
xaraab xaraab chããT-kar rakh-loo	Sort out the bad ones and keep them.

75. [saa]: Like any marked adjective it has three variants, [saa], [see], and [sii], and occurs after adjectives as well as nouns and pronouns. The resultant phrases can occur either adjectivally or as an explicator to a following adjective, depending mainly on the "head" of the phrase, i.e., on the word immediately preceding [saa] in the phrase. It is difficult to give a single isolated meaning for [saa]; we can only discuss examples of its occurence with various "heads".

76. With nouns: A noun can occur before [saa] either in its direct case form or in the oblique. The change in meaning is not always significant. A direct case head will give the phrase a meaning similar to English "-like" or "-ish" compounds. With an oblique case head the phrase will more often be an explicator than otherwise. Often the distinction would be of the following nature.

direct case head	"a horse-like animal"
oblique case head	"an animal like the horse"

Often the distinction is of the same type as discussed in Section 71 with reference to [jaisaa] and [kee jaisaa], though there again the meanings may overlap. In such instances the [saa] phrase itself can be expanded by an addition of [-kaa], [-kee], or [-kii] between the head and [saa].

raam jaisaa aadmii = raam saa aadmii = raam-kaa saa aadmii

Or ghooRee jaisaa mũũh = ghooRee-kee jaisaa mũũh = ghooRee saa mũũh = ghooRee-kaa saa mũũh

Examples:

us-kaa mũũh ghooRee saa hai	He has a face like a horse.
woo ahmad saa neek nahĩĩ	He is not kind the way Ahmad is.
saRak-par ghooRaa saa jaataa deekhaa	I saw something like a horse going down the road.
itnee-mẽẽ duur kuch dhuwãã saa dikhaaii diyaa	In the mean time, what appeared to be some kind of smoke, was seen in the distance.
ããkhõõ-mẽẽ surxii sii aa-gaii	a kind of redness appeared in his eyes.

Consider the last two examples. In these, [saa] is used in what is often described as its "reductive" sense. "Not smoke itself, but something like smoke; not redness ever so clearly, but something like it." There is no comparison of any kind involved in these sentences; by using [saa], the speaker merely wants to appear more equivocal. Both the reductive and comparative functions of [saa] are equally common in Urdu.

77. Sometimes the co-occurence of [-kee] (or [-kii]) and [saa] may involve an elipsis.

ghooRee-kee saa mũũh = ghooRee-kee mũũh saa mũũh

Or musalmaanõõ-kee see tyoohaar = musalmaanõõ-kee tyoohaarõõ-kee see tyoohaar

Gaalib-kii sii Gazlẽẽ = Gaalib-kii Gazlõõ-kii sii Gazlẽẽ

78. With pronouns: If a personal pronoun occurs as the head of the phrase, it must be in oblique case.

mujh saa aadmii	a man like me
kooii ham saa bhii too hootaa	There should have been at least someone like us.

In all such instances the phrase can be expanded with the addition of some variant of [-kaa]; actually such expanded phrases are more common than the unexpanded ones. Thus, with pronominal heads, it is preferable to use either a [jaisaa] phrase or an expanded, [-kaa saa] phrase.

mujh saa aadmii = meeraa saa aadmii = mujh jaisaa aadmii = meeree jaisaa

79. [yee] and [woo], as personal pronouns rather than demonstratives, do not occur in unexpanded [saa] phrases. It is always [in-kaa saa], [un-kee see], [us-kii sii], etc.

[yee] and [woo], as demonstratives, however, do occur in unexpanded [saa] phrases, but always in their direct case forms, and mean "this one" and "that one" respectively.

woo saa deenaa	Give me that one.
yee sii kitaab	this particular book

These forms are more common in spoken than in written Urdu.

80. Among the rest of the pronominal forms only [kaun], [joo], [itnaa], [utnaa], and [kooii] occur with [saa]. These pronominal forms remain in direct case before [saa], and do not usually occur in expanded [saa] phrases. The exceptions are [kis-kaa saa] and [kisii-kaa saa], both of which are rare in occurence and are restricted to the comparative usage.

yee un-kii kaun sii kitaab hai	Which of his books is this?
Cf. yee kaun kitaab hai	Which book is this?

Thus, though it is possible to say,

aap-koo in-mẽẽ-see kaun pasand hai,

"Which of these do you like?", it is preferable to say

aap-koo in-mẽẽ-see kaun sii pasand hai.

joo sii aap-koo pasand hoo	Whichever you may like.
kooii sii dee-diijiyee	Give me any of those, it doesn't matter which one.
bas itnii sii baat-par aap xafaa-hoo-gaee?	Why, you got mad for such a minor matter?

The last three are examples of the reductive usage of [saa].

81. With adjectives: Both the adjective and [saa] will agree with the noun referred to. In some cases these phrases may seem to have the meaning of the "ish" compounds of English, i.e., a little less unequivocal. In other instances, however, [saa] may seem to intensify the meaning of the adjective, especially when the implication is of something undesirable or unfair. In most cases it may have to be left untranslated in English, the intonation and the context sufficing to make the implication clear. Though [saa] phrases are very common in attributive position, they are not common at all as predicative complement.

kooii acchii sii saaRii dikhaaiyee	Please show some good saris.
itnii sii miThaaii-kaa mãĩ kyaa karũũ	What should I do with such a small amount of candy?
itnaa baRaa saa ghar aur us-mẽẽ bas doo aadmii	Such a huge house and in it only two persons!

Because [saa] is inflected like marked adjectives, it is useful when in an unmarked adjective is to be used in nominal function; it makes the gender and number of the thing referred to unambiguous.

kooii umdaa saa lee-loo	Take some really fine one.

82. Order of adjectives: As for the relative order of adjectives in long sequences, it is as follows.

1. Possessive adjectives
2. Demonstratives, interrogatives, [kuch], [kooii], etc.
3. (Explicators, if any)
4. Simple adjectives

meerii kitaab	my book
meerii woo kitaab	that book of mine
meerii kuch kitaabẽẽ	some books of mine
meerii kuch acchii kitaabẽẽ	some good books of mine
meerii kuch baRii acchii kitaabẽẽ	some very good books of mine

[kuch] can sometimes occur before the possessives, for the purpose of contrast.

kuch meerii kitaabẽẽ, kuch aap-kii kitaabẽẽ	Some of my books and some of yours.

83. There are no separate comparative or superlative endings in Urdu. In both cases the postposition [-see] is used. For comparison, [-see] comes after the noun or pronoun compared with. For expressing the superlative, it comes after [sab], "all". In each case the adjective remains unchanged.

yee kitaab acchii hai	This book is good.
yee kitaab us-see acchii hai	This book is better than that one.
yee kitaab sab-see acchii hai	This book is the best.

When no particular comparison is implied, the explicator [zyaadaa] is used before the adjective, which again remains unchanged.

woo kitaab acchii thii, leekin yee kitaab zyaadaa acchii hai	That book was good, but this book is better.
aaj mausam zyaadaa xaraab hai	Today the weather is worse.

There are at the same time a few borrowed Perso-Arabic words which may occur in this kind of function.

aaj tabiyat beh-tar hai	Today I feel better.
woo bad-tariin saabit huaa	He turned out to be the worst.

See Section 233 for more on these borrowed forms.

84. The following are some of the more common words used as explicators in Urdu.

1. [bahot]: "much; very"

bahot acchii kitaab	a very good book

2. [bahot hii]: "extremely"

bahot hii miiThaa khaanaa	extremely sweet food

3. [zyaadaa]: "excessive"; never used with [kam]," "less". (Also see the comparative function discussed above.)

yee too zyaadaa puraanaa nahĩĩ	This isn't too old.

4. [bilkul]: "completely; entirely"

yee bilkul acchii nahĩĩ	This isn't at all good.

5. [kuch]: "somewhat; a little"

yee kitaab kuch acchii hai	This book is somewhat good.

6. [thooRaa]: "somewhat; a little"

ab too thooRaa behtar hũũ	No I'm a little better.

7. [baRaa]: "much; intense"

woo meeraa baRaa gahraa doost hai	He is an extremely good friend of mine.

8. [kam]: "less"

yee kitaab kam xaraab hai	This book is less bad.

9. [aur]: "further; more"; often [aur bhii].

aglaa mahiinaa aur bhii saxt hai	The next month is even more difficult.
wahãã too aur acchaa khaanaa mileegaa	You will get even better food there.

10. [bee-had], [bee-intihaa]: "extreme; intense"

bee-had saxt imtihaan	an extremely hard test
bee-intihaa saxt garmii	very severe heat

85. Urdu verbs are cited in dictionaries in their infinitive forms.

aanaa	to come
khaanaa	to eat
siikhnaa	to learn
baanaa	to be made
banaanaa	to make
banwaanaa	to cause to be made

Two things immediately attract our notice.

1. A relatively simpler Urdu form can be best translated into English by a more complex form. The same would be true if we were translating from English into Urdu. By making this observation we simple want to emphasize the fact there can be no one-to-one relationship or correspondence between the verbal system of one language and that of another. In this book, therefore, all the English translations are essentially situational equivalents, and the students should consider them so, making sure in each instance of the constituents of the Urdu sentence and the relationship between them.

2. Urdu infinitives are identified by the ending, [-naa]. What is left after this ending is removed is called the verbal stem. Thus, from the above infinitives, we get the following verbal stems.

aa, khaa, siikh, ban, banaa, banwaa

These verbal stems carry the meaning that identifies each verb.

86. The stem of any Urdu verb can occur by itself as an imperative.

aa	Come!
khaa	Eat!

These imperative forms can be used only where the pronominal form, [tuu] can be used for referring to the object of the command. Thus

tuu khaa

but not [tum khaa].

87. A verbal stem can have certain mood and number-person endings directly attached to it. These we refer to as the subjunctive endings. A subjunctive construction is one in which the action of the verb is assumed by the speaker to take place some time in the future, and/or be contingent upon some other matter. These constructions, therefore, can occur both in conditional sentences and in command sentences. The subjunctive endings are as follows.

-ũũ	1st person, singular; [mãĩ]
-oo	2nd person; [tum]
-ee	2nd and 3rd person, singular; [tuu], [woo], etc.
-ẽẽ	plural and polite; [ham], [aap], [woo], etc.

Examples:

šaayad woo aaee	Perhaps he'd come.
šaayad ham aaẽẽ	Perhaps we might come.
agar aap jaaẽẽ	If you should go...
agar tum kahoo	If you say...
tum khaaoo	Eat!
aap ab jaaẽẽ	You should go now!

88. The subjunctive forms can in turn have directly attached to them the future ending, [-gaa]. The future ending shows the same gender-number contrast as marked adjectives.

woo jaaeegaa	He will go.
woo jaaeegii	She will go.
mãĩ kal nahĩĩ jaaũũgaa	I won't go tomorrow.
yee laRkiyãã urduu siikhẽẽgii	These girls will learn Urdu.
tum un-see milnee kab jaaoogee	When will you go to meet him?
tum caloo, too mãĩ bhii calũũgaa	If you go, I'll also come.
tum siikhoo, too woo bhii siikhee	If you learn, then he would learn too.
tum siikhoogee, too woo bhii siikheegaa	If you learn, he will learn too.

The last two sentences point to the fact that though the subjunctive also refers to an action in the future, it implies a less definite assumption on the part of the speaker. With the future, the speaker is more certain.

89. We have already mentioned the use of the stem and the subjunctives as imperatives. Three other forms need to be mentioned to complete the list.

The infinitive form itself is used as an imperative; the pronominal reference being to [tum]. It is relatively more polite than the subjunctive form mentioned earler. Thus, [laaoo], "Bring!", will be used only with those much younger in age or with very intimate friends. On the other hand, [laanaa], "Bring!", can be used also with equals as well as with those *strangers who are considered socially neither one's* equals nor one's superiors, e.g., with street vendors. As an imperative, therefore, the infinitive form is more common with [tum]; the other form is used mostly in subjunctive constructions. In this function, the infinitive is referred to as neutral imperative.

90. Just as there is a special polite pronominal form, [aap], there is also a special polite imperative form that goes with it. The ending for this polite imperative is [-iyee].

aap aaiyee	Please come.
un-see zaruur miliyee	Please do meet him.

Four very common verbs have slightly different polite imperative forms.

leenaa	liijiyee	Please take.
karnaa	kiijiyee	Please do.
piinaa	piijiyee	Please drink.
deenaa	diijiyee	Please give.

91. The polite imperative forms can often have the future ending, [-gaa], added to them for added politeness. Sentences

with these more polite forms usually also contain polite interjections, such as [zaraa], [bhaii], to give the sentence the appearance of a suggestion rather than an order.

aap dillii zaruur jaaiyeegaa	Be sure to go to Delhi.
zaraa woo kitaab diijiyeegaa	Will you please hand me that book.

92. Prohibitives or negative commands: In most cases the simple negative particle [na] is used.

wahãã na jaaiyee	Please don't go there.
yee kaam na karoo	Don't do this work.

But with [tuu] and [tum], a special prohibitive particle [mat] is also used.

wahãã mat jaaoo	Don't go there.
aaj mat jaa	Don't go today.
yee kaam mat karoo	Don't do this work.

[mat] has a stronger prohibitive effect than [na] or [nahĩĩ]; it is, therefore, not usually used with [aap].

(tuu) mat jaa	Don't go.
(tum) mat jaaoo	Don't go.
(aap) na jaaiyee	Please don't go.

[mat] is not used in other verbal constructions.

93. Participles: Three types of participles are possible in Urdu.

1. Conjunctive
2. Imperfect
3. Perfect

94. Conjunctive participles are made by adding [-kar] or [-kee] to the stem. [-kar] is never added to the stem of the verb [karnaa] "to do". With other verbs either [-kar] or [-kee] is possible; the former being more common in the written prose;

in poetry, the choice often depends on metrical requirements. [-kee] is more common in the spoken language. (In our transcription a hyphen will be used with these endings.)

We call this participle conjunctive in view of its function: it connects the action of one verb to the action of another, which either happens simultaneously or as second in sequence.

1. mãĩ un-see milũũgaa	I will meet him.
2. mãĩ jaaũũgaa	I will go.
1. + 2. mãĩ un-see mil-kar jaaũũgaa	I'll go after meeting him.

Thus [mil-kar] can be translated as "having met; after having met". However, it should be borne in mind that though a sequential effect (one act after the other, in time sequence) may probably be traceable in each occurrence of the conjunctive participle, the nature of the particular two (or more) verbs involved may sometimes require that the two acts should be considered simultaneous.

kitaab leeT-kar mat paRhoo	Don't read the book while lying down.
woo baat badal-kar boolaa	Changing the topic, he spoke.
woo xafaa-hoo-kar boolaa	He spoke angrily.

Consider the above with the following.

jaa-kar leeT-rahoo	Go and lie down.
saamnee aa-kar booloo	Come in front and speak.
jab woo soo-kar uThaa	When he got up after the nap...

95. Often in some common proverbs and in idiomatic constructions the conjunctive ending is dropped and the stem occurs by itself to convey a conjunctive meaning. Such constructions were more common in early Urdu prose; in the modern style, except in the proverbs, the conjunctive ending is used more regularly.

Early Urdu: [ghar-see nikal, baahar jaa-baiThii]
Modern Urdu: [ghar-see nikal-kar baahar jaa-baiThii]
She came out of the house and sat down outside.

96. The imperfect and perfect participles are different from the conjunctive participle in that they are predominantly adjectival. Their endings have variants identical with adjectival variants, agreeing in gender and number with the subject of the construction. The conjunctive participle is adverbial in function and shows no agreement of any kind.

The ending for the imperfect participle is [-taa] (aa,ee,ii). Grammarians often refer to it as the active participle, or the present participle.

The ending for the perfect participle is [-aa] (aa, ee, ii). After stems ending in a vowel, a [y] is added before the masculine singular ending in [-aa]. Grammarians variously refer to it as the passive participle, or the past participle.

aanaa	aataa, aatii	aayaa, aaii
basnaa	bastaa, bastii	basaa, basii
khoonaa	khootaa, khootii	khooyaa, khooii

However, some very common verbs have irregular perfect participle forms.

karnaa,	"to do":	kiyaa; kiyee; kii
deenaa,	"go give":	diyaa; diyee; dii
leenaa,	"to take":	liyaa; liyee; lii
jaanaa,	"to go":	gayaa; gaee; gaii

[jaanaa] also has a participle form [jaayaa], which occurs only in passive constructions and in a few other restricted usages. In the more common predicative and modifier usages, it is [gayaa] forms that are always used.

97. Before discussing the imperfect and perfect participles separately, we must try to make explicit a few things characteristic to them.

These two participles do not in themselves contain any reference to time or tense. We refer to the [-taa] forms as the imperfect participles, because they indicate that the action of the verb, in its particular reference of the tense indicated by the auxiliary, is not/ was not/ has not been/ would not be completed or brought to an end. In this way the imperfect participle refers to a process or action, as contrasted with the perfect participle which refers to a state, or a single complete act. This distinction is further enhanced in their modifier function where the imperfect participle has a very definite active meaning; and the perfect participle a passive meaning. Thus [khaataa], "eating", but [khaayaa], "eaten". These distinctions can perhaps be better indicated in a table like the following:

	Imperfect Participle	Perfect Participle
1.	incomplete action	completed action
2.	process or action	state
3.	active in meaning (reference to the subject of action)	passive in meaning (referenc to the object of action)
4.	less definite, more presumptive	less presumptive, more definite
5.	action occurring more than once	one single occurrence

With reference to the distinctions noted above, it must be kept in mind that it is never just any one of them that signifies the participle. Thus when we call them imperfect or perfect we mean to include all the above distinctions as functional at one and the same time.

98. These dichotomized notions will be further elaborated when we discuss the various uses of each of the two participles. But before proceeding with that it is essential that we give in full the paragigm of the verb [hoonaa] "to be; to become", for its various forms occur in auxiliary and other functions with the participle forms of other verbs.

1. Present Auxiliary:

hai	non-first person, singular; [woo]; [tuu]
hãĩ	plural; [ham]; [aap]; [woo]
hoo	second person, plural, informal; [tum]
hũũ	first person, singular; [mãĩ]

2. Past Auxiliary:

thaa	masculine, singular
thee	masculine, plural
thii	feminine, singular
thĩĩ	feminine, plural

3. Subjunctive and Future:

[hoo (-gaa; -gii)] with [tuu]; [tum]; [woo] (singular)
[hõõ (-gee; -gii)] with [ham]; [aap]; [woo] (plural)
[hooũũ, hũũ (-gaa; -gii)] with [mãĩ]
[hooiyee (-gaa)]: polite imperative

4. Conjunctive Participle:

hoo-kar

5. Imperfect Participle:

hootaa
hootee
hootii
hootĩĩ

6. Perfect Participle:

huaa
huee
huii
huĩĩ

99. The present auxiliary forms and the past auxiliary forms have been introduced earlier as the equational paradigms of [hoonaa], "to be". The last three sets of forms carry the meaning "to become". The forms of the third set contain both the meanings.

woo acchaa hai	He is good.
woo acchaa thaa	He was good.
woo acchaa huaa	He became well.
agar woo acchaa hoo	If he be good.
woo jaldii acchaa hoogaa	He will soon be well.
jab woo acchaa hoo-kar aayaa	When he came back after getting well.
woo acchaa hootaa hai	He is becoming well.

100. Imperfect Participle: The imperfect participle can occur either in a nominal phrase or, in its predominant function, in a verbal phrase. An imperfect participle refers to an incomplete action or, quite often, to a series of occurrences of that action. It thus represents more a process than an achieved state. It is often active in meaning, and therefore always has its grammatical agreement with the subject of the action. Occurring by itself it often indicates a certain presumptiveness on the part of the speaker regarding the occurrence of the action of the verb.

101. In nominal phrases an imperfect participle can function either as a nominal itself, or as a modifier with another nominal. In both cases it can occur either by itself or followed by the perfect participle form of [hoonaa], the latter being more common in Urdu. When occurring as a nominal, the imperfect participle is inflected like a marked masculine noun unless it is followed by the perfect participle form of [hoonaa], in which case the latter is inflected like a marked masculine noun, while the imperfect participle is inflected like an adjective. When occurring as a modifier it is always inflected like a marked adjective.

caltii gaaRii	a moving train
khiltaa phuul	a flower in bloom
Duubtaa suuraj	the setting sun
badaltii duniyaa	a changing world
baazaar jaataa huaa laRkaa	a boy who was going to the market
kapRee dhootii huii aurtẽẽ	women washing clothes
hal calaatee huee kisaan	farmers driving the plough
Duubtaa huaa suuraj	the setting sun
hawaa-par uRtee huee baadal	clouds flying in the wind

Occasionally the imperfect participles of two semantically related verbs occur together as modifiers.

caltee-phirtee loog	men moving to and fro
naactii-gaatii taswiir	a dancing and singing picture

In its nominal function the imperfect participle in Urdu is generally followed by the perfect participle form of [hoonaa].

jaatee huõõ-koo rookoo	Stop those who are going away.
khaanaa khaatii huii-nee kahaa	The one who was eating, spoke.
laRtee huõõ-koo rookoo	Stop those who are fighting.

Of the four above-mentioned uses of the imperfect participle, the second is the more common. The least common is the nominal function, which is more commonly expressed by the infinitive plus [-waalaa] constructions.

102. In adverbial function, the imperfect participle occurs in certain idiomatic constructions, for example with a following form of either [rahnaa] or [jaanaa]; these we will discuss later. The adverbial phrases we will discuss here are of three kinds.

103. Imperfect participle followed by the perfect participle of [hoonaa], both agreeing with the subject in gender and number (like marked adjectives). This adverbial usage indicates that the action of the participle occurred simultaneously with the action of the main verb.

woo rootii huii boolii	She said, crying.
woo jaatee huee boolee	He spoke while going.
laRkiyãã gaanee gaatii huii aaĩĩ	The girls came singing songs.
woo khaataa huaa boolaa	He spoke while eating.

104. Imperfect participle followed by the perfect participle of [hoonaa], both in their masculine oblique forms. This adverbial

usage usually indicates that the action of the participle started prior to the action of the main verb, and that the latter in some sense cancelled or stopped the first. Of course, due to the nature of the agreement mentioned in the first adverbial usage, in many instances the distinction between the first and the second usage may not be very clear; also sometimes just the nature of the two actions involved may be a cause for ambiguity. Such ambiguities may be cleared by a reference to the larger context, or by using the third type of adverbial construction, discussed below.

A.	woo kheeltee huee gir-paRii	She fell down while playing.
B.	woo hãstee huee boolaa	He said in laughing.

To make our meaning clear let us compare the above sentences with the following.

C.	woo kheeltii huii gir-paRii	She fell down as if in play.
D.	woo hãstaa huaa boolaa	He laughingly said.

while the meaning of B and D are more or less similar, because of the nature of the verbs involved, the meanings of A and C are different, because the nature of the two actions involved allow for a meaningful differentiation. However, as mentioned earlier, in many instances it will not be useful to insist on this distinction, and would be preferable to use the third type, (given below), to make our meaing clear.

105. Imperfect participle in oblique, repeated. This construction is used to indicate unambiguously that the action of the main verb occurs later in sequence than the action of the participle; and that in some instances the action of the main verb may be considered to be a result of the other. In other instances this construction may simple indicate that the action of the main verb terminated the action of the participle.

woo booltee-booltee cup hoo-gayaa	While talking he suddenly became silent.
mãĩ caltee-caltee thak-gayaa	I became tired from walking.
woo hãstee huee roo-paRii	While laughing she suddenly began to cry.

In all the above examples the use of the particular participle phrase is important to convey the desired effect.

106. Consider the following sentences:

A.	mãĩ-nee aatee huee us-koo deekhaa	I saw him as I was coming.
B.	mãĩ-nee us-koo aatee huee deekhaa	I saw him as he was coming.
C.	mãĩ́-nee us-koo aataa huaa deekhaa	I saw him as he was coming.
D.	mãĩ-nee salmaa-koo aatii huii deekhaa	I saw Salma coming.
E.	mãĩ-nee salmaa-koo aatee huee deekhaa	I saw Salma coming.
F.	woo aataa huaa unkoo deekhtaa thaa	He used to see him while coming.
G.	woo aatee huee un-koo deekhtaa thaa	He used to see him while coming.
H.	woo aatii huii un-koo deekhtii thii	She used to see him while coming.
I.	woo aatee huee un-koo deekhtii thii	She used to see him while coming.

The use of the imperfect participle in the above sentences can be variously treated; in some cases as very clearly adverbial, in others as some kind of a modifier agreeing with the object of the main verb. The first we may refer to as oblique adverbial, the second, as direct adverbial. The following points should be noted carefully.

1. The word order plays an important part in reducing ambiguity. Compare A with B.

2. When the imperfect participle refers to the subject of the main verb, it occurs in its direct adverbial form only if the subject also occurs in its direct form, i.e., if the subject is not followed by any postposition. It never occurs with the subject in the oblique. The oblique adverbial form of the participle, however, can occur in either case.

3. When the imperfect participle refers to the object of the main verb, it can occur both ways, either as oblique adverbial or as direct adverbial.

4. When two imperfect participle constructions are to be used in the same sentence, one referring to the subject and the other to the object, or both referring to either one of them, the latter-in-sequence of the two participles usually occurs by itself, to avoid the repetition of [hoonaa].

mãĩ jaatee huee us-koo paRhtaa deekhtaa thaa	As I would go by I would him reading.
tum jaatee huee us-see miltee jaaoo	On your way you should meet him and then continue.

107. In verbal phrases the imperfect participle occurs either by itself or followed by any of the various forms of the verb [hoonaa]. The two slightly idiomatic constructions with verbs [jaanaa] and [rahnaa] will be discussed separately.

108. The imperfect participle is used by itself to indicate a repeated action in the past when the sentence also contains reference to other repeated past actions, which followed the first one.

mãĩ wahãã jaataa aur woo hameešaa mujh see miltaa	I would go there and he would always meet me.

If the sentence were simply "I used to go there", the participle would have to be followed by the past auxiliary form of [hoonaa]. (See below). It is only when more than one action is mentioned in the sentence that the auxiliary is dropped and the imperfect participle occurs by itself.

jab mãĩ jaataa woo bahot xuš-hootee	Whenever I'd go he used to be very happy.

109. In conditional sentences, where the action of the second clause is conditional to the occurrence or non-occurrence

of the action of the first clause, the imperfect participle is used by itself in both the clauses. The first clause in such sentences often begins with [agar] "if", [maga], "but", or [leekin] "but"; while the second clause always begins with [too] "then".

tum caltee too kaam ban-jaataa	If you go the work will be done. OR If you had gone the work would have been done.
agar tum na caltee too kaam ban-jaataa	If you don't go the work will be done. OR If you had not gone the work would have been dnne.
agar aap aatee too baRii xušii-kii baat hootii	If you were to come it would be a matter of joy.

As is evident from the above examples, such constructions can be translated either as past (contrary-to-fact) conditionals, or as future conditionals; the unambiguous third sentence is so because of the nature of the verbs used in it. The main thing to note in this connection is the sense of indefiniteness indicated by the present participle; in past conditional it refers to acts which did not take place, in future conditional it refers to acts as mere presumptions on the part of the speaker, a kind of wishfulness on his part. Contrast this with the use of the perfect participle in similar sentences where a strong assertion is made by using the definite future form in the second clause. (See Section 137).

110.

tum na aatee too kaam na bantaa	If you hadn't come the work wouldn't have been done.
jiit na hootii leekin kaam too ban-jaataa	It may not have been a victory but the work would have been done.
deer zaruur hootii magar kaam ban-jaataa	A delay would certainly occurred but the work would have been done.

In the above examples the imperfect participle is used in both the clauses. The sentences express in each instance an assumption on the part of the speaker. Also in each case the assumption is retroactive and, in a sense, contrary to the fact.

This presumptiveness or indefiniteness implied in the use of the imperfect participle can be better understood by considering the following examples.

deer zaruur hootii magar kaam ban-jaataa	There certainly would have been a delay but the work would have been done.
deer zaruur hoogii magar kaam ban-jaaeegaa	There certainly will be a delay but the work will be done.
deer zaruur huii magar kaam ban-jaaeegaa	There certainly has occurred a delay but the work will be done.
deer zaruur huii magar kaam ban-gayaa	There certainly occurred a delay but the work was done.

Another place where the imperfect participle is used because of its implied presumptiveness is as in the following sentences:

1.	mAI caahtaa hUU ki tum bhii caltee	I desire that you should also go.
2.	woo caahtaa thaa ki mAI bhii us-kee saath caltaa	He desired that I should also accompany him.

In the above two examples the imperfect participle indicates a desire on the part of the subject of the main clause. In both cases the participle can be replaced by the equivalent subjunctive form, with no change in meaning except that in the first example the subjunctive form being the same as the imperative would indicate a stronger sentiment on the part of the speaker, "I".

1.a.	mAI caahtaa hUU ki tum bhii caloo	I desire that you should also go.
2.a.	woo caahtaa thaa ki mAI bhii us-kee saath calUU	He wanted me to go with him.

111. With the present auxiliary of [hoonaa]:

1.	aataa hũũ saahab	I'm coming, sir.
2.	tum kahãã jaatee hoo	Where are you going?
3.	woo aksar yahãã aataa hai	He comes here often.
4.	rooz saat bajee woo meeree-paas aataa hai	Every day at seven he comes to me.
5.	aap rooz kahãã jaatee hãĩ	Where do you go every day?
6.	mãĩ jab bhii wahãã jaataa hũũ us-koo xuš paataa hũũ	Whenever I go there I always find him happy.
7.	Thairiyee mãĩ bhii aap-kee saath caltaa hũũ	Wait, I'll also come with you right now.

As is clear from the above examples, this construction indicates basically two sets of meanings.

A. Habitual Non-Past: An action used to occur quite often in the past, has not been discontinued, and may also occur in the future. The emphasis is not explicity on the immediate, present moment. The examples 3 - 6 can thus be referred to as of habitual non-past.

B. In some sentences this construction indicates a simple present or a very immediate future. In this usage it is more often found with the first person pronominal reference than any other. We are calling this a very immediate future because the use of the regular future will indicate that the action will occur in the future, though not necessarily in the very immediate. Compare example 7 with the following.

Thairiyee mãĩ bhii aap-kee saath calũũgaa	Wait, I'll also come with you.

This second use of the imperfect participle construction we will refer to as simple non-past.

112. In negative sentences of the above type, [nahĩĩ] is used rather than [na]. In negation the auxiliary is often dropped, and only the imperfect participle occurs by itself; in such cases the participle can occur in the feminine plural form, too.

mãĩ-nee un-see kahaa magar woo nahĩĩ aatii hãĩ
OR mãĩ-nee un-see kahaa magar woo nahĩĩ aatĩĩ
"I asked her but she isn't coming."

113. With the past auxiliary of [hoonaa]:

woo aksar wahãã jaataa thaa	He used to go there often.
woo Galtii kartaa thaa agar wahãã jaataa thaa	He was making a mistake if he used to go there.
aap pichlee saal kahãã rahtee thee	Where di you used to live last year?
woo yahãã nahĩĩ rahtaa thaa	He didn't used to live here.
mãĩ un-see aksar na mil-paataa thaa	I was often unable to meet him.

The action in the above sentences can be described as one that used to occur in the past over a period of time or at frequent intervals, and was then also discontinued in the past. In each case the reference is to only one kind of action, which distinguishes this construction from the use of the imperfect participle discussed above. We will refer to this usage as of habitual past.

114. With the subjunctive forms of [hoonaa]:

mumkin hai woo aataa hoo	It's possible he might be coming.
mumkin hai woo Thiik kahtaa hoo	It's possible he's telling the truth.
agar mãĩ us-see miltaa hũũ too mujhee sazaa doo	Punish me if I be the one who meets him.
jab woo sootaa hoo us-koo maar-Daaloo	Kill him when he is asleep.

As is clear from the above examples the meanings of such constructions derive from two elements: the participle indicating a durative action, rather than a state or a single complete instance; and the subjunctive indicating a relatively weak assumption regarding the possible occurrence or non-occurrence of the action. We shall refer to such constructions as of subjunctive imperfect.

115. With the future forms of [hoonaa]:

woo us waqt kheeltaa hoogaa	He will be playing at that time.
us din sab loog rootee hõõgee aur mãĩ hãstaa hũũgaa	That day everyone would be crying and I'll be laughing.
woo kahtaa hai too Thiik hii kahtaa hoogaa	If he says so, it must be so. (Lit., If he's saying so, he must be saying the truth.)
ab too tum cal saktee hoogee?	You must be able to walk now
tum too rooz wahãã jaatee hoogee?	You must be going there every day?

The assumption is still about the possible occurrence or non-occurrence of the action; this time, however, the assumption or the assertion is more emphatic than when the subjunctive was used. We refer to these as future imperfect constructions.

116. Imperfect participles do not occur with the conjunctive participle of [hoonaa].

117. With the imperfect participle of [hoonaa]:

tum kheeltee hootee too ham jiit jaatee	We'd have won if you had been playing.
jhuuT na booltee hootee too pakRee thooRee hii jaatee	He wouldn't have been caught had he not been lying.

The two imperfect participles combine to give the construction the maximum improbability; hence its use for the past contrary to fact. The two imperfects also enhance the idea of durative action. Compare [jhuuT na booltee], "had he not lied", with [jhuuT na booltee hootee], "had he not been lying (as a habit, or over a period of time)". This construction is not very common.

The two imperfect participles can be followed by the present or past auxiliaries of [hoonaa], though other forms are not allowed.

woo aksar us waqt kheeltaa hootaa thaa	He often used to be playing at that time.
woo pããc bajee paRhtaa hootaa hai	He is always studying at 5 o'clock.

In the above examples the two participles combine to emphasize the durative or habitual aspect of the action, while the auxiliary provides the tense. This construction is also not very common. Often it is replaced by the perfect participle plus [karnaa] construction (See Section 186).

118. With the perfect participle of [hoonaa]:

woo sootaa huaa	He pretended to sleep. (Lit., He became asleep)
woo sootaa huaa too usee mat jagaanaa	Don't wake him if he happens to be asleep.
agar woo na paRhtaa huaa tabhii us-see mil paaoogee	You will be able to meet him only if he doesn't happen to be studying.

The first example is from early Urdu. This construction is no longer used with a past tense reference. The other two examples have a non-past reference, an action going on at some one point in the future. Even the latter usage is not so very common in Urdu. The more common usage of [huaa] after an imperfect participle has been discussed in Section . The perfect participle of [hoonaa] in such constructions never occurs with any following auxiliary, either present or past.

119. Perfect participle: Like the imperfect participle, the

perfect participle in Urdu can also occur either in a nominal phrase, an adverbial phrase, or a verbal phrase. It indicates a completed action, or one single complete occurrence of the action. Thus by itself it indicates an achieved state rather than a process or action spread over a stretch of time. As opposed to the imperfect participle it is passive in meaning, i.e., in case of transitive verbs (see below), it always refers to the direct object of the verb, and agrees with it in gender and number, like marked adjectives. As it expresses an achieved state, it is considered more definite than the imperfect participle, and in conditional sentences it indicates a strong assertion on the part of the speaker regarding the possible occurrence of the action.

120. In nominal phrases a perfect participle can function as a nominal itself, or as modifier to another nominal. In either case it can occur either by itself or followed by the perfect participle form of [hoonaa]. The latter usage, however, is more common in Urdu. When occuring as a nominal, the perfect participle is inflected like marked nouns unless it is followed by the perfect participle form of [hoonaa], in which case the latter is inflected like marked nouns, while the perfect participle of the main verb is inflected like a marked adjective.

1.	baiThaa aadmii	a seated man
	phaTaa juutaa	a torn shoe
	ublaa khaanaa	boiled food
	badlii duniyaa	changed world
2.	kursii-par baiThaa huaa aadmii	the man seated on the chair
	meeraa phaTaa huaa juutaa	my torn shoe
	ghar-kii badlii huii haalat	the changed condition of the house
	woo kahii huii baat dohraataa rahaa	He kept repeating what had been said.

unhõõ-nee baiThee huee aadmiyõõ-koo uThaa diyaa	He caused the people who were seated to get up.

As mentioned earlier the second type of nominal phrase is more common in Urdu than the simple participle used as a modifier or as a nominal.

121. Quite often the perfect participles of two semantically (usually also formally) related verbs occur together as modifiers. In such cases the perfect participle of [hoonaa] does not occur.

sunnaa: "to hear" sunaanaa: "to narrate or tell"
sunii-sunaaii baat: "a rumor"; lit., "a heard and told matter"

rakhnaa: "to place or put" rakhaanaa: " to cause to be put"
rakhii-rakhaaii daulat: "the wealth which had been saved"

bacnaa: "to be saved" bacaanaa: "to save"
bacii-bacaaii izzat: "what ever honor was left"

kaTnaa: "to be cut" phaTnaa: "to be torn"
kaTee-phaTee xat: "torn and mutilated letters"

122. As a nominal, the perfect participle never occurs in the direct case. Thus its use as a nominal, or, in other words, as a relative pronominal ("the one who..."), is limited to situations in which it can be followed by a postpositon ([-nee], [-koo], etc.). A further restriction is that it is always followed by the perfect participle form of [hoonaa]. The exceptions to the latter rule may sometimes be found in early Urdu, but even then the exceptions are restricted to masculine singular and plural referents and their occurrence with the post-position [-koo]. In contemporary Urdu this construction is not so common. Usually the participle phrase is used as a modifier to the noun which is overtly expressed. Thus:

baiThee huõõ-koo uThaa-diyaa	He caused the people who were seated to get up.
OR baiThee huee loogõõ-koo uThaa-diyaa	ditto

The latter construction would be preferred. The first construction would be used only when one wants to avoid repetition.

123. There is another usage, however, which is more common, and that is with a pronoun as the referent. In such instances the pronoun always occurs in its oblique form (ref. the first restriction above), and always occurs before the participle phrase.

mujh luTii huii-koo sataanaa kyaa	What gain in hurting me who am already robbed.
mujh luTii huii-nee aaj kuch nahĩĩ khaayaa	I, who have been robbed, have eaten nothing today.

Note that in the second example the oblique form of [mãĩ] is used, though otherwise its direct form is used before the postposition [-nee].

un sab baiThee huõõ-nee haath uThaa-diyee	Those who were all seated raised their hands.

Note that the above participle phrase means "those who were all seated" and not "all those who were seated"; the latter would have required a relative clause. Also note that the pronoun always comes first in this kind of nominal phrase.

124. Before we go on with the other uses of perfect participles we must discuss the distinction between the transitive and the intransitive verbs of Urdu. The notion of transitivity in Urdu is as such not very different from that in English: transitive verbs require the use of a direct object to complete the idea expressed by them. In Urdu we use the term transitive to identify those verbs which require the use of the postposition [-nee]

after their subject in constructions in which the perfect participle of the verb is finite. All such verbs require the use of a direct object to complete the action expressed by them. Thus in Urdu the transitive verbs are distinguished not only by a semantic characteristic but also by a formal device: the postposition [-nee], after their natural subjects.

What is a natural subject? Without going into philosophical apologies we can say that the person or thing which appears as the subject of the verb in its subjunctive or future direct constructions is also the natural subject of the verb in its perfect participle direct construction. We contrast this notion of a natural subject with the notion of a grammatical subject. The latter is that nominal element in the sentence which determines the number, person, or gender agreement in the finite verb. The two are one and the same in all direct constructions except when the perfect participle of a transitive verb is used as the finite verb, in which case the natural subject is followed by [-nee], and the direct object acts as the grammatical subject of the participle, determining the agreement.

Examples:

1.	mãĩ aataa hũũ	I'm coming.
2.	mãĩ aayaa	I came.
3.	mãĩ aaũũgaa	I will come.
4.	mãĩ paRhũũgaa	I will read.
5.	mãĩ kitaab paRhũũgaa	I'll read the book.
6.	mãĩ-nee kitaab paRhii	I read the book.
7.	mãĩ-nee xat paRhaa	I read the letter.

In above examples,[mãĩ], is the natural subject in all the seven sentences. In numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5 it is also the grammatical subject. In 6 and 7, [mãĩ] is the natural subject, but the direct objects, [kitaab] (6) and [xat] (7), are the grammatical subjects. [aanaa] is an intransitive verb in Urdu, while [paRhnaa] is transitive, requiring the use of the postposition [-nee] after its natural subject.

Almost all of the semantically transitive verbs of Urdu are also grammatically transitive, and are indicated as such in the glossary by the symbol N in the appropriate column. ([laanaa], "to bring", is the only relatively common exception.)

Then there are a few verbs which can be regarded as complete in Urdu with or without a direct object. For example, [laRnaa]: "to fight".

woo mujh-see laRaa	He fought with me.
us-nee mujh-see laRaaii laRii	He fought a battle with me.

Such verbs we refer to as neuter verbs; these are identified by the symbol n.

The remaining verbs are intransitive, and are left unmarked by any symbol in the glossary.

125. In the above paragraph we used a term, "direct constructions". What is the distinction between direct and indirect constructions? So far we have tried to describe Urdu grammar in terms of its constituents and their relationship with each other, without depending upon their English glosses. There are some constructions, however, which can be best described to English speaking students, for whom this book is primarily meant, in terms of their usual English equivalents. These we refer to as indirect constructions and they are characterized as follows. Direct constructions (DC) are those in which the subject of the verb, on the basis of the English gloss, occurs in its direct case or is followed by the postposition [-nee]. Indirect constructions (IC) are those in which the subject of the verb, on the basis of its English gloss, does not occur in direct case but in the oblique, followed by either [-koo] or [-kee], or some other postposition, except [-nee].

mãĩ likhtaa thaa (DC)	I used to write.
mãĩ-nee xat likhaa (DC)	I wrote the letter.
mujhee xat likhnaa hai (IC)	I have to write a letter.

mujhee likhnaa caahiyee (IC)	I ought to write.
un-koo waqt na thaa (IC)	They didn't have time.
aap-kee cooT lag-saktii hai (IC)	You can get hurt.

Some of the more common indirect constructions will be discussed later. Those verbs which require indirect constructions are indicated in the glossary by a symbol for the appropriate postposition that goes with each of them. (See the introduction to the glossary for more details.)

126. In its adverbial function the perfect participle can occur by itself either singly or repeated. When occurring singly it can often be followed by the perfect participle form of [hoonaa].

127. The use of a repeated participle is limited to only the intransitive verbs. If the subject of the main verb is followed by some postposition, the repeated participle will always occur in its masculine oblique form. If the subject of the main verb occurs in its direct case form, the repeated participle will usually agree with it in gender and number, like a marked adjective; though often it may also be found occurring in masculine oblique form. The latter is not so common in written Urdu.

woo leeTaa-leeTaa boolaa	He spoke while still lying down.
woo jhukii-jhukii meeree-paas aaii	Bent down she came near me.
laRkii-nee leeTee-leeTee kahaa	The girl said while lying down.
laRkii leeTii-leeTii boolii	The girl spoke while lying down.

128. If the verb of the participle is transitive, the participle will not be repeated and will only occur in the masculine oblique form, often followed by the perfect participle form of [hoonaa], also in masculine oblique.

tum yahii kapRee pahnee huee caloo	You come along wearing these same clothes.
woo nazrẽẽ jhukaaee huee boolii	She spoke with down-turned glance.
woo mũũh khoolee khaRii thii	She was standing with her mouth open.
woo ããkhẽẽ phaaRee mujhee deekhtaa rahaa	He kept looking at me wide-eyed.

The above adverbial phrases describe a state which was established prior to the action of the main verb and which continued during the action of the main verb. The formally similar imperfect participle phrase generally indicates that the two actions started and took place simultaneously. (See Section 103).

129. If the verb of the participle is intransitive and the subject of the main verb is not followed by any postposition, the participle will agree with the subject, like a marked adjective. The participle can occur either singly or followed by the perfect participle of [hoonaa], which will also agree with the subject, like a marked adjective.

	tum kamree-mẽẽ ghusii kyaa kar-rahii hoo	What are you doing there hiding in the room?
OR	tum kamree-mẽẽ ghusii huii kyaa kar-rahii hoo	ditto
	woo baiThaa huaa tak-rahaa thaa	He was sitting there staring.
	woo deer-tak baiThii rootii rahii	For a long time she sat there crying.
	woo wahãã leeTaa huaa kitaab paRh-rahaa hai	He is lying there reading a book.

130. A question can be asked: what is the difference between the above and the adverbial phrase consisting of a repeated participle? The repeated participle emphasizes the fact that the state described by it continued during the action of the main verb.

This emphasis can be used sometimes to indicate an intimate relationship between the two verbs; on the other hand it can often be used to show the incongruity of the two actions occurring together. An example of the first would be the following sentence:

woo jhukii-jhukii meeree-paas aaii   Bent down, she came near me.

In the above sentence we want to emphasize the fact that she was bent all the time she was coming near. On the other hand, take the following sentence:

us-nee leeTee-leeTee jawaab diyaa   He replied without getting u

The literal meaning of the above sentence is "He replied while lying down", but in a given context it will be best translated by its situational equivalent, "He replied without getting up", emphasizing the fact that though he was expected to get up, he did not. However, in brief, both describe a state which continued during the action of the main verb. Compare these two with the use of a repeated imperfect participle described in Section 105 .

131. If the verb of the participle is intransitive, but the subject of the main verb is followed by some postposition, the following distinctions are generally observed in Urdu.

1. If the subject of the main verb is followed by the postposition [-nee], the repeated participle phrase is preferred which in this case is always in masculine oblique.

us-nee leeTee-leeTee jawaab diyaa	She answered without getting up.
us-nee baiThee-baiThee kitaab baRhaa-dii	He extended the book while remaining seated.

2. If the subject of the main verb is followed by some other postposition, the adverbial participle will usually be followed by the perfect participle of [hoonaa], and both the participles will occur in masculine oblique. This does not discount the use of the repeated participle phrase for that particular emphasis discussed above.

usee gayee huee bahot din hoo-gayee	It has been many days since she left.
mujhee yahãã aaee huee bahot deer huii	It has been quite some time since I arrived here.
usee baiThee-baiThee din biit-gayaa	The whole day passed while he sat there.

In the last sentence the repeated participle indicates that he shouldn't have sat there the whole day but he had to.

132. This fact should always be kept in mind that the imperfect participle is active in meaning and thus always refers to the subject of the verb, while the perfect participle is basically passive in meaning and thus in the case of transitive verbs always refers to the direct object of the verb. Certain verbs therefore by their nature will require the use of imperfect participles while others will occur only in the perfect participle form. Take for example the verb [roonaa], "to cry". Its perfect participle form is never used in adverbial functions; only its imperfect participle is used, to indicate the actual action or process of crying.

woo rootaa huaa boolaa	He said, crying.
OR us-nee rootee huee kahaa	ditto

On the other hand, take the verb [baiThnaa], "to sit". This verb will distinguish between the use of imperfect and perfect participles in adverbial functions.

us-nee baiThtee huee kahaa	He said as he was sitting down.
us-nee baiThee huee OR baiThee baiThee kahaa	He said while seated.

133. The oblique adverbial phrases discussed in the preceding sections, containing either the imperfect or the perfect participle, can be made more specific by indicating the subject of the verb in the adverbial phrase. This subject will be

followed by the postposition [-kee], which agrees with the adverbial phrase in case and gender.

woo gaaRii-kee caltee huee kuud-paRaa	He jumped out while the train was moving.
meeree baiThee huee tum kuch nahĨĨ kah-saktee	You can't say anything while I am here.
caukiidaar-kee rahtee huee bhii coorii hoo-gaii	Despite the watchman's living here, a theft occurred.
aap-kee hootee huee woo kaisee jaa-saktaa hai	How can he go so long as you are here?

Such constructions are not very common. Usually an equivalent relative clause will be used to convey the idea. The use of a perfect participle in such constructions is rarer still. The use of this construction is mainly for conveying that special emphasis expressed in the last three examples.

134. In verbal phrases the perfect participle can occur either by itself or followed by the various forms of [hoonaa]. It also occurs in certain idiomatic constructions with a following form of [karnaa] or [rahnaa]; these are discussed elsewhere.

135. The perfect participle can occur by itself. If the verb is intransitive, the subject occurs in direct case; if the verb is transitive, the subject occurs in the oblique, followed by the postposition [-nee]. In the latter case the verb agrees with the object in gender and number. The ending for the perfect participle is [-aa] after a consonant and [-yaa] after a vowel. The endings can have three variants, like marked adjectives, when the participle is followed by any other verbal form; and four variants -- the additional one for feminine plural -- when they occur by themselves.

calnaa: calaa, calee, calii, calĩĩ
aanaa: aayaa, aaee, aaii, aaĩĩ
soonaa: sooyaa, sooee, sooii, sooĩĩ

Some very common verbs have slightly different perfect participle forms than what might be expected.

karnaa, "to do"	kiyaa, kiyee, kii, kĩĩ
jaanaa, "to go"	gayaa, gayee, gaii, gaĩĩ
deenaa, "to give"	diyaa, diyee, dii, dĩĩ
leenaa, "to take"	liyaa, liyee, lii, lĩĩ
siinaa, "to sew"	siyaa, siyee, sii, sĩĩ

The paradigm for the last example is typical of all the stems ending in [-ii].

jab mãĩ kal wahãã gayaa	When I went there yesterday...
aap kab yahãã aaee	When did you come here?
woo mujh see kal milii	She met me yesterday.
jab laRkiyãã wahãã gaĩĩ	When the girls went there...
aap-nee kaam kiyaa?	Did you do the work?
aap nee kitaab paRhii?	Did you read the book?
mãĩ nee kitaabẽẽ paRhĩĩ	I read the books.
laRkii-nee kitaabẽẽ paRhĩĩ	The girl read the books.
laRkee-nee kitaabẽẽ paRhĩĩ	The boy read the books.
laRkõõ-nee kitaabẽẽ paRhĩĩ	The boys read the books.

In above sentences the perfect participle indicates a single complete act which occurred in the past. This past can be very immediate or very remote, for no such distinction is indicated by this construction. It does not indicate, either, whether the effects of that past act are still continuing or something else has happened since then. We will refer to these as simple past constructions.

136. The fact that the perfect participle of a transitive

verb agrees in number and gender with its direct object means that the direct object should occur in direct case and not be followed by any postposition, and such usually is the case. The direct object of a transitive verb, whether in an imperfect participle construction or in a perfect participle one, usually occurs in direct case and without any postposition unless it happens to be a personal name or a pronoun referring to a human being, in which case it must be followed by the postposition [-koo]. Another exception would be the case of a direct object which has been made specific in any way -- by mentioning it earlier in lthe context, by giving it a proper name, or by establishing some specific relationship with the subject -- in which case it may be followed by the postposition [-koo], especially if the reference is to some human being. In all cases of a direct object followed by [-koo], the perfect participle will occur always in its masculine singular form. This would also happen if no object is mentioned or implied, or if a clause introduced by the conjunction [ki] ([ke]) is to be considered the direct object of the participle. A non-human direct object, specific or non-specific, usually occurs without [-koo].

saliim-nee kitaab deekhi	Salim saw a book.
saliim-nee eek laRkaa deekhaa	Salim saw a boy.
saliim-nee us laRkee-koo deekhaa	Salim saw that boy.
saliim-nee us laRkii-koo deekhaa	Salim saw that girl.
saliim-nee usee deekhaa	Saliim saw her.
saliim-nee yee naii kitaab likhii hai	Salim has written this new book.
saliim-nee likhaa hai ki woo kal aaeegaa	Salim has written that he'd come tomorrow.

137. The perfect participle is relatively more certain and definite than the imperfect participle. (See the earlier discussion.) On that account it is used in future conditional

sentences, to express a more definite hope or assumption regarding some act in the future. (See Section 153)

agar woo aayaa too mãĩ us-see baat karũũgaa	If he comes I will talk with him.
agar woo aayaa too kaam bigRaa	If he comes the work is done with.
agar yee baat sahii-niklii too baRii badnaamii hoogii	If this turns out to be true, there will be a big scandal.
yee baat sahii-niklii aur badnaamii huii	As soon as this turns out to be true, a scandal will follow.

As can be seen from the above examples, the perfect participle is considered more definite than either the subjunctive or the imperfect participle. In the above conditional sentences only the perfect participle or the future form can occur in the second clause to match the certainty indicated by the perfect participle in the first clause. By the same token it is never used to indicate the contrary-to-fact past, i.e., something which never actually happened but is now wished to have happened in the past. Only the imperfect participle is used for that purpose. (See Section 109). Compare the following examples:

agar woo jaataa too kaam ban-jaataa	If he had gone the work would have been done.
agar woo gayaa too kaam ban-gayaa	If he goes the work will be done.

138. With the present auxiliary of [hoonaa]:

woo baiThaa hai	He is sitting. He is seated.
woo kahãã gayaa hai	Where has he gone?
aap un-see milee hãĩ?	Have you met him?
agar woo baiThaa hai too us-koo baiThaa-rahnee-doo	Let him sit if he is sitting there.
woo kab-see yahãã Thairii hai	How long has she been staying here?
jii hãã, mãĩ-nee yee kitaab paRhii hai	Yes, I have read that book.

us-nee un-koo deekhaa bhii hai?	Has he ever seen him?

The use of a perfect participle with the present auxiliary of [hoonaa] indicates that the action of the participle verb happened some time in the past, remote or immediate; however, the result of that action or the state described by that participle (referring to the object in case of transitive verbs, and to the subject, in case of intransitive verbs) has continued into the present, and nothing has happened to erase that state or effect. We refer to these as present perfect constructions. They differ from the simple past constructions in that the latter generally refer to some single act which occurred in the past, emphasizing the act of its occurrence and not so much the participle (state) meaning, which makes the present perfect constructions most suitable to indicate a single but complete (perfect) state of affairs which has continued until now. This can be best understood by noting the fact that while the simple past is regularly used in relative clauses, where a single act in the past is related to another act in the past, the present perfect is usually never used and instead is replaced by the more "final and complete" construction with [cuknaa]. (See Section 170 for [cuknaa].

jab mãĩ wahãã gayaa too mãĩ-nee deekhaa	When I went there I saw...
mãĩ wahãã gayaa hũũ	I have been there.
jab aap wahãã jaa-cukee hãĩ	When you have been there...

139. With the past auxiliary of [hoonaa]:

woo kal wahãã gayaa thaa	He had gone there yesterday.
mãĩ-nee yee kitaab pichlee saal paRhii thii	I had read this book last year.
mãĩ kal wahãã gayaa thaa aur un-see milaa thaa	I very definitely went there yesterday and met him.
woo kal bhii aayaa thaa aur aaj bhii	He had come yesterday and also today.
un-koo kitaabẽẽ kis-nee bheejii thĩĩ	Who had sent the books to him?

jab tum un-see milee thee, unhõõ-nee kyaa kahaa thaa	What did he say to you when you met him?
woo aap-see milnee aaee thee	He had come to meet you.
yee imaarat kis-nee banwaaii thii	Who had this building built?

The use of a perfect participle with the past auxiliary of [hoonaa] indicates that the action of the participle verb happened in the past, remote or immediate; however, the state described by the participle is not implied to have continued into the present. (In actuality, though, it may not have, and something may have happened to end it.) We refer to these as past perfect constructions.

140. At this point it will be useful to establish some kind of a semantic range for each of the three construction types discussed above, simple past, present perfect, and past perfect. We shall do that by contrasting them in identical frames, and by describing the related context to the extent it may be needed for better understanding of each usage.

1. [woo aayyaa]

This short sentence will generally be translated as "He came", but this does not imply that it will always mean that the act of coming occurred before the speech act. [woo aayaa too] will require that the act of coming should happen after the speech act. [loo woo aayaa] will indicate that the two acts happened at more or less the same time, and so on. What we can be certain about is the fact that it is always a single complete act of coming which is indicated.

2. [woo eek haftaa huaa aayaa]

"He came a week ago". In this sentence the use of the adverbial phrase eliminates the ambiguity. The act definitely happened before the speech act. But at the same time it does not indicate in any way whether the state continued into the present or not.

3. [woo aayaa hai]

This will usually be translated as "He has come." But another possibility is "He is here", for the present auxiliary definitely means that "state" expressed by the participle has continued into the present. The act of coming happened prior to the speech act, but the subject of the verb is still here; that he is still in the state of "having finished the act of coming"; that whatever else he may have done, he has not gone away, or at least so the speaker supposes.

4. [woo eek haftaa huaa aayaa hai]

"He came a week ago (and is still here)."

5. [woo aayaa thaa]

The act of coming definitely happened prior to the speech act. And following the example 3, we can translate it as "He had come" or "He was here". But as for the state expressed by the participle, we know only that the subject was in that state at one particular time in the past. We do not know in any way whether the subject is still in that state or not. Though, lacking any contrary statement in the wider context, we would tend to think that the subject is no longer in that state, or that "he is no longer here, though he had definitely come".

6. [woo eek haftaa huaa aayaa thaa]

"He came a week ago". "He was here a week ago". (If he's still here, we do not know it.)

7. [mãĩ wahãã gayaa hũũ]

[mãĩ wahãã gayaa thaa]

The act of going happened in both cases prior to the speech act. But while the first sentence emphasizes the fact "I have been there", that "I have had this experience and it is still meaningful for me", the second sentence only emphasizes that the act of going did take place sometime in the past and though in both cases the speaker has returned from "there" (otherwise how can he be saying the sentence "here" and contrasting "here" with "there"), in the first sentence the speaker is making a statement about his present condition and in the second about the act which happened in the past.

This will become clearer if we look at the two sentences as possible responses to two different questions.

Q.	aap kabhii wahãã gayee hãĩ	Have you ever been there?
A.	jii hãã, mãĩ wahãã gayaa hũũ	Yes, I have been there.

Q.	aap wahãã gayee thee?	Did you go there?
A.	jii hãã, mãĩ wahãã gayaa thaa	Yes, I did go there.

141. The relationship between simple past and past perfect is important to understand. The simple past (SP) is used to refer to acts which occurred after the act mentioned in the past perfect (PP). Let us look at the following examples, in which each verbal phrase (perfect participle, with or without the auxiliary) has been assigned a number for easy reference.

A. mãĩ kal un-see milnee gayaa (1). unhõõ-nee kahaa (2). ki woo eek din pahlee haamid-see milnee gayee thee (3). leekin us-see na mil-paaee (4).

"I went to see him yesterday. He said that he had gone to see Hamid a day ago but couldn't see him."

In the above discourse, the first verbal phrase is SP, but it could have been PP for a more emphatic statement. The next verb indicates an action which occurred after 1, therefore it has to be in SP. The next verb is in PP, because the action indicated by it occurred before both 1 and 2. But it could have been in SP, because it is part of a narrated speech, which is considered to be independent of relationships established by verbal phrases outside of it. However, it will have its own set of relationships. The act No. 4 occurred after the act No. 3, and therefore it too has to be in SP.

B. mãĩ kal un-see milnee gayaa thaa (1). cũũ-ki unhõõ-nee kahaa thaa (2). ki caar bajee-kee baad aanaa, is liyee mãĩ saat bajee gayaa (3). unhõõ-nee bataayaa (4). ki haamid saahab subh-kii gaaRii-see aayaa hãĩ (5). haamid saahab-kee bhaaii bhii aayee thee, leekin woo doo-pahar-mẽẽ calee-gayee (7).

"I went to see him yesterday. Because he had asked me to come after four o'clock, I went there at seven. He told me that Mr. Hamid arrived by the morning train. Mr. Hamid's brother had also come, but he went away in the afternoon."

1 is in PP and indicates an emphatic statement. 2 indicates that which happened before 1, and therefore has to be in PP. 3 indicates an act which has already been expressed emphatically and therefore need not be emphasized again, hence SP. But if instead of [is liyee], one said [isii liyee], "for that very reason", one might also like to repeat the emphasis and use PP, though the emphasis this time will not be so much on the act of going as on the exact time when one went. 4 is in SP, and cannot be otherwise after 1. 5 is part of a separate narrated speech. It indicates that Mr. Hamid arrived before the speech act (No. 4) and that he is still around. 6 indicates an act which also happened before 4, but indicates that the person is no longer around, as overtly expressed by 7, which has to be in SP after the PP of 6.

C. mãĩ-nee kitaabẽẽ xariidĩĩ (1). aur ghar-kii taraf calpaRaa (2). itnee-mẽẽ baariš hoonee-lagii (3). mãĩ eek peeRkee niicee khaRaa hoo-gayaa (4). abhii doo minaT guzree thee (5). ki eek mooTar paas aa-kar rukii (6).

"I bought the books and set off towards home. Just then it began to rain. I stopped (stood) under a tree. Only two minutes had passed before a car came and stopped near me."

The two SP constructions in the first sentence express two acts which occurred prior to the speech act. But the speaker does not want to emphasize the fact that these acts had fully and completely occurred before something else occurred; if he did, he would not only have used the PP constructions, but also a more completive verb as well as a conjunction to connect the first sentence with the second sentence.

mãĩ-nee kitaabẽẽ xariid-lii thĩĩ aur ghar-kii taraf cal-paRaa thaa ki itnee-mẽẽ baariš hoonee lagii.

But 4 will have to be in SP in either case. The next verbal phrase, 5, is in PP in order to convey the kind of emphasis we discussed above. And after the PP of 5, the SP of 6 was obligatory.

142. So far the examples have been of intransitive verbs. When we look at the use of perfect participles of transitive verbs the first and foremost thing to note and keep in mind is that the participle refers to the object of the verb, and agrees with the object in gender and number in the same way as a marked adjective. In other words the relationship between the direct object of the verb and the perfect participle is the same as between the subject of a copulative sentence and the predicative adjective in the sentence. This is especially true when the perfect participle of a transitive verb is followed by any of the two tense auxiliaries. In such instances we find that the real subject (i.e., the nominal phrase with the postposition [-nee] can be omitted. The remaining construction will still be a complete sentence, with a verbal phrase and a grammmatical subject to determine the agreement. However the new sentence will differ from the original in one important respect: the new sentence will describe a state while the original sentence with a real subject described an act. Consider the following examples:

mãĩ-nee kitaab meez-par rakhii

"I placed the book on the table". A single act which occurred some time prior to the speech act, probably one among a series of other acts. If the book is till on the table, we don't know. The above sentence, with or without [mãĩ-nee], emphasizes, or is more concerned with, the act that "I" performed than the state in which either "I" or the book were after the act was finished.

mãĩ-nee kitaab meez-par rakhii hai

"I have put the book on the table". It is a statement of fact or rather of two facts from the point of view of the speaker.

1. The first fact is that "I" is the one who put the book, i.e., "I" is in the state of one who has put a certain book on a certain table. In simpler terms the above sentence can be an answer to the question, "Who put the book on the table?", [meez-par kitaab kis-nee rakhii].

2. The second fact is that as far as the speaker is concerned the book is still on the table, i.e., the book is in the state of one which has been placed somewhere and not removed from there.

As soon as we note the above two facts implied in the example, we can also see how this sentence can occur without the real subject, [mãĩ-nee], and have a different meaning from the longer sentence of the example.

kitaab meez-par rakhii hai	The book is lying on the table.

Now it is an unequivecal statement about the state in which the book is, and makes no reference, implied or overt, to the "actor" or the "act". It is the same kind of statement about the book in question as [kitaab acchii hai], "The book is good". This sentence can be considered as one possible response to the question: [kitaab kahãã rakhii hai] or [kitaab kahãã hai], "Where is the book?"

What we said about the above example with present auxiliary is also true for the following example with past auxiliary.

mãĩ-nee kitaab meez-par rakhii thii	I had put the book on the table.

This example represents a single complete act which occurred not only prior to the speech act but also prior to some other act that occurred prior to the speech act. It describes the state in which "I" and the book were before some other act happened. The above sentence can occur either as a part of a longer sentence of the type:

mãĩ-nee kitaab meez-par rakhii thii ki kisii-nee pukaaraa	I had put the book on the table when someone called ou

Or it can occur as one possible response to the question, "Where is the book?" As an answer to such a question the above example declares that "I" had put the book on the table; if it is not there any longer, "I"doesn't know about it. For the use of a past auxiliary, as discussed earlier, does indicate that the "book" may no longer be on the table, although to the knowledge of "I" it was there some time in the past.

Thus it follows that the above example can occur, without the real subject, [mãĩ-nee], as a complete and distinctly meaningful sentence.

kitaab meez-par rakhii thii	The book was lying on the table.

The "book" was in a particular state at some time in the past; and again there is no reference to either the "actor" or the "act" as such.

143. However, in connection with the distinctions noted above, three things should be kept in mind.

1. The above-mentioned use of the perfect participle as a predicative adjective is similar to its occurrence with the perfect participle form of [hoona] which will be discussed in a later section.

2. Although the above-mentioned distinctions are theoretically true for all transitive verbs, in practice it is not so. The reason is that most of the transitive verbs have a corresponding intransitive verb with passive meaning, and that "passive", intransitive verb will be used in preference to the transitive

verb when the sentence is intended to describe the state in which the object is. Only a very few transitive verbs do not have corresponding intransitive verbs, [rakhnaa] being the commonest. In all other cases a transitive verb will be used when the reference is directly to the "actor" or the "act", and a corresponding intransitive, when the reference is to the "object" of the act. Thus:

	mãĩ-nee kitaab khoolii hai	I have opened the book. OR I have the book open.
Cf.	kitaab khulii hai	The book is open.

Other examples:

kitaab us-nee phaaRii hai	He has torn the book.
kitaab phaTii hai	The book is torn.
mãĩ-nee caaee-mẽẽ šakar Dalii thii	I had put sugar in the tea.
caaee-mẽẽ šakar Dalii thii	There was sugar in the tea.

3. In most cases, with both transitive and intransitive verbs, it is more common to use the perfect participle form of [hoonaa] when one desires to refer to a "state" rather than an "act". The perfect participle of [hoonaa] will be inflected like a marked adjective, and its "passive" meaning will make our intentions clear. Consider the following examples; note that the various forms of [huaa] can occur with both the transitive and the intransitive verbs.

	kitaab meez-par rakhii thii	The book was lying on the table.
OR	kitaab meez-par rakhii huii thii	ditto
	yee kitaab phaTii hai	This book is torn.
OR	yee kitaab phaTii huii hai	ditto.
	yahãã un-kaa naam likhaa hai	His name is written here.
OR	yahãã un-kaa naam likhaa huaa hai	ditto
	caaee-mẽẽ šakar Dalii huii hai	There is some sugar in the tea.
	mãĩ-nee deekhaa too eek aadmii wahãã baiThaa huaa thaa	When I looked, I saw that a man was seated there.

144. When corresponding transitive and intransitive verbs are available it is more common to use the intransitive verb when reference to a "state" is desired. However, if we also wish to indicate an agent which brought about that state, it is customary to use the transitive verb followed by the proper form of [huaa]. As for the "agent", it will be followed by the postposition [-kaa], and will occur before the participle phrase agreeing like it with the "object" of the "act" or the grammatical subject of the verb.

yee kitaab phaTii hai	This book is torn.
yee kitaab meerii phaaRii huii hai	This book has been torn by me.
yee xat us-kaa likhaa huaa hai	This letter has been written by him.
yee sab dukaanẽẽ meerii banaaii huii hãĩ	All these shops have been built by me.
yee peeR kis-kee lagaaee huee hãĩ	By whom have these trees been planted?

Two things should be borne in mind with reference to the above examples.

1. The participle phrase plus the "agent" can occur in the modifier position discussed earlier in Section 120. This shift in the word order will make the sentence more descriptive regarding its subject or, in other words, will reduce the emphasis which the "agent" carried occurring immediately before the verbal phrase. This distinction may be lost in the English translation which in most cases will remain the same except for an added emphasis in pronunciation.

yee meerii phaaRii huii kitaab hai	This is the book I tore.
yee us-kaa likhaa huaa xat hai	This is a letter written by him.
yee sab meerii banaaii huii dukaanẽẽ hãĩ	These are all shops which I built.

2. The perfect participle forms of [hoonaa] will not occur in such sentences if the "agent" phrase is replaced by the real subject followed by [-nee].

1. yee kitaab meerii phaaRii huii hai
2. yee kitaab mãĩ-nee phaaRii hai

As discussed earlier the first sentence expresses the speaker's desire to describe the state in which the book is, while the second sentence indicates that his chief concern is to emphasize the identity of the "actor" as well as the "act". Of course this subtle distinction is not always so rigorously preserved. For example in response to the question "Who wrote this letter?", [yee xat kis-nee likhaa hai], it is possible to use either of the following: [hamiid-nee likhaa hai], "Hamid wrote it" or [hamiid-kaa likhaa huaa hai], "It is written by Hamid".

Thus the importance of these constructions is not due to their use as predicative adjectives in above examples, but rather to their function as modifiers, in which case they can replace an entire relative clause.

us-kaa likhaa huaa xat khoo-gayaa	The letter written by him got lost. OR The letter that he wrote got lost.
mãĩ un-kii likhii huii kitaab paRh rahaa thaa	I was reading the book written by him.
mãĩ aap-kee diyee huee ghar-mẽẽ rahtaa hũũ	I live in the house that you gave to me.
kyaa aap-koo meerii bheejii huii kitaabẽẽ milĩĩ	Did you receive the books which I sent you?
woo meerii laaii huii meez lee-kar calaa gayaa	He picked up the table which I had brought, and left.

145. Perfect participles with the subjunctive forms of [hoonaa]: As expected the combination expresses a less definite (than with the future) supposition on the part of the speaker regarding the

subject of the participle, i.e., of his or her being in the state described by the participle. Such sentences more often than not contain such particles as [šaayad], "perhaps", [agar], "if", to substantiate the speaker's intentions. These particles and other phrases are especially used when the subject of the participle is either the first person pronoun, [mãĩ], or the second person pronoun, [tum], for in both the cases the subjunctive form of [hoonaa] is the same as present auxiliary.

woo baahar baiThaa hoo too usee bulaa laaoo	If he is sitting outside bring him here.
mumkin hai woo baahar baiThaa hoo	It is possible that he is sitting outside.
agar mãĩ sooyaa hũũ too mat jagaanaa	If I am sleeping don't wake me.
šaayad tum-nee yee kitaab paRhii hoo	Perhaps you might have read this book.

We refer to the sentences of the above type as subjunctive perfect constructions.

146. Perfect participles with the future forms of [hoonaa]: There is still an assumption expressed, of the same type as in the above subjunctive perfect sentences, though more strongly asserted because of the use of the future forms rather than the subjunctive. Naturally when a strong assertion is made the particles [šaayad], [agar], etc., are not used.

kal dukaanẽẽ zaruur khulii hõõgii	The shops will certainly be open tomorrow.
us-nee coorii kii hoogii warnaa us-kee paas itnaa paisaa kahãã	He must have committed burglary otherwise when did he have so much money.
us-nee apnee faaedee-kee liyee kiyaa hoogaa	He must have done it for his own gain.
caman-mẽẽ bahaar saii hoogii leekin ham qaid-mẽẽ hõõgee	There would be spring in the garden but we will be in prison.

We refer to these as future perfect constructions.

147. Consider the following examples:

mãĩ-nee soocaa šaayad woo urduu paRhtee hõõ	I thought perhaps they were studying Urdu.
woo kheeltaa hoogaa jab us-koo goolii lagii	He must have been playing when he was hit by the bullet.
mãĩ-nee soocaa šaayad tum wahãã gayee hoo	I thought you might have been there.
tum-nee too bas apnaa hii faaedaa deekhaa hoogaa	You must have looked at only your own interest.

In the above examples of the subjunctive imperfect and perfect and the future imperfect and perfect, the use of a subjunctive or future form does not imply that the assumption on the part of the speaker is about something that would take place after the sppech act. As is clear from the above examples the event or state assumed by the speaker may in fact have occurred before the speech act. The use of the subjunctive or the future only indicates the degree of certainty that the speaker feels about his assumption.

148. Like the imperfect participle the perfect participle also does not occur with the conjunctive participle of [hoonaa].

149. Perfect participles with imperfect participle forms of [hoonaa]: This combination of two particples can occur either by itself or followed by one of the two auxiliaries.

150. A perfect participle followed by a corresponding imperfect participle of [hoonaa], and not further followed by any auxiliary, forms what we shall refer to as past contrary (to-the-fact) constructions.

agar tum gayee hootee too kaam ban jaataa	If you had gone the work would have been done. (But if fact you didn't go and the work was not done.)

tum un-see milee hootee too woo tumhaarii maded kartee	If you had met with him he would have helped you. (But how could he when you didn't?)
kal un-koo xat likh diyaa hootaa too aaj miljjaataa	If you had written him yesterday he would have received the letter today.
na wahãã gayee hootee na itnii takliif uThaatee	If you hadn't gone there you wouldn't have suffered so.

We call such constructions past contrary because they are unambiguously so. Although a similar meaning is also indicated by using only the imperfect participle, that usage is ambiguous. It indicates a desire on the part of the speaker, but the desire can refer both to an act which did not occur before the speech act and to an act which is desired to occur after the speech act. But past contrary constructions discussed above refer only to an act which did not in actuality occur.

The second clause, however, contains an imperfect participle in both cases. One can say that as in such constructions no explicit tense marker is used, the tense aspect of the perfect participle comes to the fore. Thus in past contrary constructions, the perfect participle provides the time (Past) element because it expresses an achieved or completed state, while the two imperfect participles combine to express the entire non-occurrence of the act or acts.

151. If, however, the combination of a perfect participle and an imperfect participle is further followed by either of the two auxiliaries, the burden of tense is shifted totally to the auxiliary, and the two participles merely express the perfective and the durative aspects, respectively. Only intransitive verbs occur in such constructions. These constructions express that the state described by the perfect participle used to occur many times in the past but no longer does (past auxiliary), or that it not

only used to occur many times in the past but also has not ceased to occur (present auxiliary).

woo aksar wahãã baiThaa hootaa thaa	He was often found seated there.
woo aksar wahãã baiThaa hootaa hai	He is often found seated there.
us-kee kamree-mẽẽ kitaabẽẽ phailii hootii thĩĩ	Books used to be scattered all over his room.
us dukaan-par too rooz bhiiR lagii hootii hai	There is daily a crowd in that store.

152. Perfect participles with the perfect participle forms of [hoonaa]: The two perfect participles can occur together either by themselves or followed by either of the two auxiliaries or the subjunctive form of [hoonaa]. The use of this combination of two perfect participles in nominal and adverbial functions has already been discussed earlier (see Section 120 ff.). Here we shall discuss their function in verbal phrases.

153. In the first instance the perfect participles can occur together by themselves in a similar function as future conditional constructions discussed in Section 137.

woo wahãã baiThaa huaa too mãĩ us-see milũũgaa	If he happens to be sitting there, I'll meet him.
dukaan khulii huii too khaanaa mil-jaaeegaa	If the store turns out to be open we shall get some food.
agar saarii qamiizẽẽ phaTii huĩĩ too kyaa karoogee	What will you do if all the shirts turn out to be torn?

Two things are to be noted with regard to these constructions. It is not the occurrence of a single "act" but the completeness and durativeness of a "state" of thing or things that is being assumed in the first clause by the speaker. The future coming to be of this state conditions the occurence of the act expressed in the second clause. The second thing to note is that it is always a future form or a neutral (infinitive) imperative that occurs in the second clause. It is these two features that distinguish these constructions, which we refer to as perfect conditionals, from what we called future conditionals in Section 137. Another thing to note is that only intransitive verbs occur unrestrictedly in these constructions. Only rarely does one come across a transitive verb.

agar us-nee dukaan khoolii huii too kuch paisaa mil-jaaeegaa	If he happens to have his store open we may be able to get some money.

In all the above examples the perfect conditional constructions can be replaced by a corresponding future perfect construction. But, while the future perfect constructions can occur by themselves to make a complete sentence, perfect conditionals refer only to a state which is desired or presumed to come about only remote from the speech act. (We are using the phrase "remote from" because this remoteness can be of either time or space.) Consider the following examples.

woo yahãã hoo too usee pakaR-loo	Arrest him if he is here.
woo yahãã huaa too usee pakaR-leenaa	Arrest him if he happens to be here at that time.

See Sections 145 and 146 for comparison.

154. The second type of constructions in which the two perfect participles occur together is rather curious. In these constructions the perfect participle of [hoonaa] occurs more often like a marked adjective, i.e., with only three variants ([huaa], [huee], [huii]), and the total effect of such constructions is very descriptive or adjectival. They do not occur by themselves as isolated utterances. They always occur in a larger context, in which case they can form a sentence by themselves, the larger context being the utterances preceding and following them. If it were not for the fact that often a fourth form, [huĩĩ], is also found after feminine plural nouns, we could say that it is simply a matter of inverse word order, i.e., the noun is followed by its modifying phrase rather than preceded by it, in order to emphasize the juxtaposition. E.g.,

ããkhẽẽ phailii huii	wide open eyes

rather than

phailii huii ããkhẽẽ

But we also find [ããkhẽẽ phailii huĩĩ], which is probably a later development, perhaps an example of wrong analogy.

To give examples of the occurrence of the type of constructions discussed above we must give more than one sentence, better still a short paragraph.

itnee-mẽẽ woo ghar-see niklaa,	Just then he came out of
baal bikhree huee, kapRee	the house. Hair dishevelled;
phaTee. na sar par Toopii, na	clothes torn. Neither a cap
pair-mẽẽ juutaa. kapRõõ-par	on his head, nor shoes on
gard jamii huii	his feet. Clothes all
	covered with dust.

As can be seen from the above example a perfect participle can also occur by itself with similar effect, but usually the participle form of [hoonaa] is also used. It should be clear from the above examples that the presence of the perfect participle of [hoonaa] enhances the descriptive effect of the preceding participle, and that is its sole purpose.

155. The two perfect participles can be followed by either of the two auxiliaries or by the subjunctive forms of [hoonaa]. Theoretically other forms of [hoonaa] should also be possible but they do not occur. These constructions are somewhat different from those discussed earlier under present perfect, past perfect, and subjunctive perfect, though in many instances they may be found to be interchangeable.

woo baiThaa hai	He is seated.
OR woo baiThaa huaa hai	

However, in larger contexts the differences between the two variants can become significant. The addition of the participle form of [hoonaa] enhances the descriptive effect of the preceding participle.

It also introduces a new element, a durative effect, into the meaning of the preceding participle; the perfect participle of the main verb now does not merely indicate a state that occurred or came to be at some one time before the speech act, it now indicates that the state was already in existence prior to that moment in the past. Consider the following examples.

mãĨ caar bajee sooyaa	I went to sleep at 4.
mãĨ caar bajee sooyaa thaa	I had gone to sleep at 4.
mãĨ caar bajee sooyaa huaa thaa	At 4 I was asleep.

This concept of "duration" is important regarding these constructions, for it restricts the interchangeability of the variants, especially if a specific moment in the past is in any way indicated in the sentence. [woo baazaar gayaa hai] is interchangeable with [woo baazaar gayaa huaa hai], "He is gone (has gone) to the market", though the latter very clearly emphasizes the durative effect, that "he" is not here and has not been here for some time. In the following sentence, however, the use of [huaa thaa] can be considered to be necessary for the desired effect. Its replacement with the simple [thaa] will reduce this effect.

jab woo aaee too mãĨ baazaar gayaa huaa thaa	When he came I had gone to the market.

On the other hand in the following example the use of [huaa thaa] is impossible.

jis gaaRii-see woo aaee thee mãĨ usii-see gayaa thaa	I went by the train he had come on.

The state of "having gone" cannot possibly have occurred with reference to "I" before "his arrival". Compare the above with the following.

jis gaaRii-see woo aaee thee mãĨ usii-mẽẽ baiThaa huaa thaa	I was seated in the same train that he came on.

In the above, both [huaa thaa] and [thaa] are possible, with no notable difference in meaning. Other examples:

saarii kitaabẽẽ zamiin-par paRii huii thĩĩ	All the books were lying on the ground.
abhii too dhuup phailii huii hai	There is still a lot of sun.
kamree-mẽẽ loog bharee huee thee	People were crowded in the room

156.

agar woo sooyaa huaa hoo too mat uThaanaa	If he is asleep don't wake him.

The above example suggests a similarity between it and those discussed earlier under nominal usages. This similarity is also supported by the fact that only intransitive verbs commonly occur in such constructions. Transitive verbs usually do not; they are always replaced by the corresponding intransitive verbs with a corresponding shift of subject. In modern prose we sometimes find such sentences as:

us-nee kitaab khoolii huii thii	He had the book open.

But this is extremely rare and can probably be traced to the influence of Panjabi. Thus it is more common to express the above idea as follows:

us-kee haat-mẽẽ kitaab khulii huii thii	The book was open in his hands.

157. Before we continue with a discussion of other verbal constructions it would be proper to make a few remarks about verb derivation. A glance at any list of Urdu verbs will show that most of them can be classified into sets of formally and semantically related forms. These sets can contain at the minimum only one form and at the maximum four.

I. jaanaa
II. leeTnaa; liTaanaa
III. bannaa; banaanaa; banwaanaa
IV. ladnaa; laadnaa; ladaanaa; ladwaanaa

Verbs belonging to I are usually intransitives, unless they are derived from adjectives and nouns by the addition of the ending, [-aa], e.g., [garmaanaa], "to warm". Another generalization would be that most verbs with a long vowel immediately before the infinitive ending, [-naa], are transitives. Only one ending is unambiguous; [-waa-] always indicates a double causative form. As for the ending [-aa-], its meaning will depend upon whether the set has four members or three.

158. It is perhaps the most difficult thing in Urdu grammar to determine precisely what semantic variation is being suggested by a formal differentiation. One possible way to analyze the situation would be to set up four semantic categories.

1. Active verbs: In these verbs the subject is always the only actor, i.e., the act is done solely by him. Also, the effects of the act are primarily, if not always exclusively, directed towards him. In other words, while some active verbs may take a direct object, all of them never take an indirect object as long as they occur in their simple forms. Only [jaanaa] and [leenaa] are used with active verbs, to make compound verbs "intensifying" their primary meanings. (See Section 162 below.)

All intransitive verbs and some transitives belong to this category; the remaining transitive verbs can be handled by the following three categories.

2. Real transitive verbs: With these verbs the subject is still the only actor, but the effects of the act are now primarily directed outward and away from him.

3. Simple causative verbs: With these verbs the subject is not the only actor, but some other actor is either overtly indicated as being caused to do something or implied to share the act with the subject.

4. Double causative verbs: The subject of the verb is no longer the actual actor; his task is simply to get others to do something.

However, as not all verbs have four different forms to match with each of these semantic ranges, the above differentiation is not always maintained. Likewise, the actual meaning of some verb may not allow certain variants. The student should, therefore, use this information only for recognition purposes and not for producing new forms. To conclude, if we want to arrange the verbs mentioned in an earlier paragraph into semantic categories, we can do it in the following manner.

Active: [jaanaa; leeTnaa; bannaa; ladnaa]
Real transitive: [banaanaa; liTaanaa].
Simple causative: [ladaanaa]
Double causative: [banwaanaa; ladwaanaa].

Examples:

woo bistar-par leeT-gayaa	He lied down on the bed.
us-nee baccee-koo bistar-par liTaa-diyaa	She lay the baby down on the bed.
zaraa cal-kar saamaan ladaa-doo	Come and help me load the baggage.
us-see kah-kar saamaan ladwaa-doo	Tell him to load the baggage.

159. By far the most common way of making verbs from nouns and adjectives is by adding to them auxiliary verbs, such as [karnaa], [hoonaa], [deenaa], [rahnaa], [nikalnaa], [uThaanaa], etc. The exact meaning of the auxiliary verb in each instance is impossible to be described. These combinations are treated as simple verbs in Urdu and are given as such in the glossary of this book. Further discussion of these verbs would be out of the scope of this book.

160. Urdu verbs can also be derived sometimes by adding a suffix, [-aa], to adjectives and nouns. Inflectional endings will then be added to the derivational ending. Most of such derived verbs are transitives and often do not occur in causative forms.

garmaanaa	"to heat something"; from [garm], "hot]
jutiyaanaa	"to beat someone with one's shoes"; from [juutii], "slippers"

161. Urdu verbs can occur either by themselves (as simple verbs) in various constructions, or in combination with other verbs. The combinations are of two kinds: compound verbs, and verbal compounds. In both cases the primary meaning is expressed by the first verbal form (primary verb), but is modified or expanded in one way or other by a second verbal form (auxiliary verb). The differences between the two are manifold. A compound verb can be replaced by the simple form of the primary verb or by another compound verb combination of the same, with only a minimum loss or change in its meaning. A verbal compound, on the other hand, cannot be replaced by either the simple form or any combination of it without a drastic change in meaning. While the compound verbs can occur as primary verbs in verbal compounds, the reverse is not allowed. Verbal compounds can, however, occur as primary verbs in other verbal compounds. Another fact to bear in mind is that a compound verb is

invariably a combination of the root of the primary verb and an auxiliary verb; on the other hand, only a few verbal compounds require the root form of the primary verb. Again, in compound verbs it is always the auxiliary verb that shows inflectional changes for gender, number, tense, etc. In verbal compounds, it is not always so; in them some of the inflectional changes may also occur in the primary verb. Further, a transitive auxiliary verb will not require the use of [-nee] after the subject if the primary verb in the combination is intransitive. Thus,

us-nee diyaa	He gave.
woo cal-diyaa	He set out.

This won't always be true with verbal compounds, each of them often having its own separate grammar.

us-nee mujhee calnee-diyaa	He let me walk.

In both cases, however, the linear order of the constituents can be broken and participles, such as [nahĩĩ], [na], [bhii], [too], etc., be inserted.

162. Compound verbs: Urdu compound verbs make it possible to express concisely a vast range of connotations and implications which can be best expressed in English only by longer phrases and constructions. Broadly speaking the function of an auxiliary verb is either to "intensify" the meaning of the primary verb or to "modify" it in various ways. The "modifications" we shall discuss in more detail with individual auxiliary verbs; it is only with regard to the "intensification" of the primary meaning that we shall try to make a few remarks at this point. In this function it would appear as if the compound verb has exactly the same meaning as the simple form of the primary verb, yet still the compound form will be preferred. Why? If we examine those constructions we shall find that they either occur in statements in which some fact or act is being asserted about, or to express the final act in a series of acts. Quite often the sentence would also have other devises for emphasis of one type or another.

In this "intensive" function, a compound verb will be replaced by the simple form of the primary verb if a negative particle, [nahĩĩ] or [na], is added to notify the non-occurrence of the act itself, and not to negate any other connotated meaning.

	woo aa-gayaa hai	He has arrived.
	woo nahĩĩ aayaa hai	He hasn't arrived.
Cf.	agar woo kal-tak nahĩĩ aa-gayaa too tum-koo sazaa mileegii	If he does not arrive by tomorrow you shall be punished.

The following are some of the more common auxiliary verbs that occur in compound verbs. As mentioned earlier, they in each case occur with the root form of the primary verb. The meanings given are always approximations, only suggesting the wide range that some of them can have.

163. [jaanaa]: When used with active verbs it generally loses its own primary meaning, "to go", and serves only to intensify the meaning of the primary verb. In that function it often emphasizes the finality or completeness of the act, and therefore would not occur in verbal compound constructions with [-rahaa] and [saknaa]. But with some active verbs and most of real transitive and other types of verbs, [jaanaa] can occur with its primary meaning, in which case it may appear as if the primary verb might have occurred as conjunctive participle. In other words, while [lad-jaanaa] would be treated as simply a more intensive form of [ladnaa], [laad-jaanaa] may seem to replace [laad-kar jaanaa]. Cf. [lee-jaanaa], "to carry away." The latter may occur with [-rahaa] and [saknaa], but the first two would not. With intransitive verbs it may often serve to emphasize a "state" rather than an "act".

itnee-mẽẽ woo aa-gayaa	Just then he arrived.
tab-tak too film šuruu-hoo-jaaeegii	By that time the movie would have begun.

Cf.	film kab šuruu-hoogii	When would the movie start?
	woo rooz das bajee ghar-see nikal-jaataa hai	He goes out of the house every day at ten.

164. [aanaa]: This is used mostly to suggest that the actor has returned to its original place or location or some other location closer to the speaker after doing the act expressed by the primary verb.

yee suntee hii woo kamree-see nikal-aayaa	On hearing that he immediately came out of the room.
yee tum un-see kyõõ kah-aaee	Why did you go and tell him that?
jaaoo, DaakTar-kee paas hoo-aaoo	Go, see the doctor (and come back).

165. [deenaa]: Just as [jaanaa] is more commonly used to intensify the meaning of active verbs, especially the intransitives, [deenaa] is used in the same manner with all transitive verbs. It suggests not only the finality and completion of the act but also points out that it was directed toward some object, often to some indirect object beside the direct one. The effects of the act are suggested to be moving outward from the subject, and thus its use can often suggest that the act was done for some other person's benefit. Its use with intransitive verbs is not common, and such constructions often carry the idea of the beginning of the act.

	woo aap-kaa kaam kar-deegaa	He will do it for you.
Cf.	woo aap-kaa kaam kareegaa	He will work for you.
	unhõõ-nee kitaab mujh-see lii aur haamid-koo dee-dii	He took the book from me and gave it to Hamid.
	mãã-nee baccee-koo eek khilaunaa xariid-diyaa	The mother bought the child a toy.
	zaraa yee xat paRh-diijiyee	Please read this letter for me.
	tum too baat-baat-par roo-deetee hoo	Why, you burst into tears at every little matter!

166. [leenaa]: It is used in the same manner as [deenaa], except for one major difference: [leenaa], with its primary meaning "to take", suggests that the subject is the main recipient of the benefits or results of the act. It may even affect him physically or, conversely, his physical form may somehow be involved in the results of the act. The use of the pronominal adjective [apnaa] in a sentence may often require the use of [leenaa] in the verbal phrase.

tum-nee apnaa kaam kar-liyaa?	Did you do your work?
woo dauR-kar un-kee saath hoo-liyaa	He ran ahead and joined him.
zaraa cal-kar un-see mil-liijiyee	Please come and meet him.
woo maan-leetee too acchii baat hootii	It would be good if he agrees.

167. [paRnaa]: Its primary meaning is rather difficult to determine. It is used in its perfect participle form in such sentences as

kitaab zamiin-par paRii hai	The book is lying on the ground.

Or in all forms in such sentences as

us-kaa kitnaa paisaa paReegaa	How much will it cost?

As an auxiliary verb in compound constructions it may carry some sense of the first meaning, but none of the second; it may suggest downward movement. But more commonly it suggests a sense of suddenness or surprise as if the act took place or began too abruptly. Its reference would be more to some "process" than to some "state".

acaanak woo zamiin-par gir-paRaa	Suddenly he fell to the ground.
eek dhakkee-mẽẽ gir-paReegii	It will fall down with one push.
woo Dar-see ciix-paRaa	He shrieked from fear.
itnee-mẽẽ doo šaraabii aapas-mẽẽ laR-paRee	Just then two drunks began to fight with each other.

168. [uThnaa]: Its primary meaning is "to rise, get up". As an auxiliary verb, [uThnaa] has more or less the same meaning and function as [paRnaa], i.e., the suddenness of the act. It does not, however, have the connotation of a downward movement; on the contrary, it may suggest in some metaphorical manner an upward movement. For example, while [paRnaa] will be used with [jagnaa], "to remain awake", as well as with [jaagnaa], "to awake", [uThnaa] will occur only with the latter. All three, [jag-paRnaa], [jaag-paRnaa], and [jaag-uThnaa], will in most contexts mean the same.

woo too har baat-par ghabraa-uThtaa hai	Never mind him, he gets worried at everything.
is biic-mẽẽ woo bool-uThaa	In the meantime he spoke up.
woo dard-see ciix-uThaa	He cried out from pain.

It may seem in many sentences that while [paRnaa] would emphasize more the suddenness and abruptness of the act, [uThnaa] would point more toward the intensity of the emotion involved.

169. [baiThnaa]: As an auxiliary verb it implies that the speaker of the sentence (as contrasted in many cases with the subject of the verb) considers the act to be of rather dubious nature. From the point of view of the speaker the act may seem to suggest on part of the actor or subject, stubbornness, aggression, or simple "unfortunateness".

tum bhii kaisii Galtii kar-baiThee	What a big mistake you've managed to commit!
mãĩ bhuulee-see un-koo dee-baiThaa	I forgot and unfortunately gave it to him.
mujhee Dar hai woo xud-kušii kar-baiTheegaa	I'm afraid he might commit suicide.

It may often retain its primary meaning, but with still a hint of the above connotations.

woo rooz wahãã jaa-baiThtaa hai	He goes and sits there everyday. (And doesn't seem to get tired of it.)

170. [cuknaa]: It does not occur by itself; mostly it occurs as an auxiliary verb, and only rarely as primary verb with [jaanaa]. [cuk-jaanaa] means "to be all used up". As an auxiliary verb, [cuknaa] emphasizes the completion or coming to an end of the act.

tum kab soo-cukoogee	When will you end your sleep?
jab woo kaam kar-cukaa too meeree-paas aayaa	When he finished the work, he came to me.

Also consider the following sentences.

woo yahãã pahlee bhii aa-cukaa hai	He has been here before.
aap too wahãã jaa-cukee hãĩ naa?	You have been there before, haven't you?
tab-tak too film šuruu-hoo-cukee-gaa	By that time the movie would have started long ago.

In the above sentences, the use of [cuknaa] not only suggests completion or coming to an end of an act, but also implies a longer lapse of time than would be suggested by the simpler form of the verb. Cf.

tab-tak too film šuruu-hoo-jaaeegaa	The movie would certainly begin by that time.

171. The above does not exhaust the list of auxiliary verbs which may occur in Urdu in compound verb constructions, nor does it convey all the semantic nuances that can be suggested by these verbs. It should always be kept in mind that often these compound verbs may have entirely unpredictable, idiomatic meanings, just as they may often imply nothing more than a conjunctive participle use of the primary verb. Wherever necessary we have included such compound verbs in our glossary and discussed them in a note to the unit in which they occurred. In the following sections we shall similarly discuss some of the more common verbal compounds of Urdu.

172. Stem of the primary verb plus [saknaa]: The auxiliary verb [saknaa] does not occur by itself anywhere else, and its meaning is established only by its function in such sentences as the following.

kyaa aap wahãã jaa-saktee hãĩ	Can you go there?
woo wahãã jaa-saktaa thaa, leekin nahĩĩ gayaa	He could have gone there, but he didn't.
mãĩ kal nahĩĩ aa-sakũũgaa	I won't be able to come tomorrow.
woo kal nahĩĩ jaa-sakaa	He couldn't go yesterday.

Thus we can say that [saknaa] is an intransitive verb, occurs in all tenses, and can be translated as "can" or "could" depending upon the context.

173. Stem of the primary verb plus [rahaa], plus [hoonaa]: In such compounds, [rahaa] is inflected like a marked adjective while [hoonaa] can occur in all its various forms. Such sentences express the idea of an act being still in process at a given moment in time, similar to the gerundive constructions of English. Also, similarly, the [rahaa] compounds can in a given context refer to an act which is to happen in near future by using the present auxiliary form of [hoonaa] instead of the future.

woo khaanaa pakaa-rahii hai	She is preparing the food.
woo un-see baat kar-rahaa thaa	He was talking with him.
mãĩ kal is waqt soo-rahaa hũũgaa	I would be sleeping at this time tomorrow.
Cf. mãĩ wahãã kal jaa-rahaa hũũ	I am going there tomorrow.

174. Stem of the primary verb plus [paanaa]: A number of things are to be noted about such compounds. Though [paanaa] is a transitive verb when it occurs by itself, it behaves intransitively and does not require [-nee] when it occurs as an auxiliary verb. As for the meaning of such compounds that can be determined only after comparing them with [saknaa] compounds on the one hand and on the other with those compounds with [paanaa] in which the primary verb occurs in its oblique

infinitive form. While [saknaa] indicates a potentiality inherent to, or identified exclusively with reference to, the subject of the verb, [paanaa] implies that the potentiality may well depend on someone else, too, beside the subject. This dependence on someone else beside the subject himself becomes more pronounced in constructions in which the primary verb before [paanaa] occurs in its oblique infinitive form. To put it somewhat grossly, the semantic range shifts from "to be able to do" to "to be allowed to do"; these differences, however, may not always be that well defined, and, of course, their situational equivalents in English may often be identical, especially in the case of the two compounds with [paanaa]. Another fact that distinguishes the latter two from [saknaa] compounds is that [saknaa] is usually used with reference to a single, specific event, while [paanaa] commonly suggests a more general statement.

	woo wahãã nahĩĩ jaa-saktaa hai	He can not go there.
	woo wahãã nahĩĩ jaa-paataa hai	He doesn't find it possible to go there.
Or	mãĩ šaam-koo aa-saktaa hũũ	I can come in the evening.
	mãĩ šaam-koo aa-paataa hũũ	I am able to come in the evenings.
Cf.	mãĩ šaam-koo aa-sakũũgaa	I will be able to come in the evening.
	mãĩ šaam-koo aa-paaũũgaa	ditto

Other examples:

agar mãĩ jaa-paayaa	If I find it possible to go.
agar mãĩ jaanee-paayaa	ditto
tum yee kaam ghar-par kar-paaoogee?	Will you be able to do this work at home.
mãĩ kal un-see nahĩĩ mil-paayaa	I wasn't able to meet him yesterday.
deekhiyee, ham jaanee-paatee hãĩ yaa nahĩĩ	Let's see if we are allowed to go or not.

175. Direct infinitive of the primary verb plus [caahnaa]: [caahnaa], by itself, means "to desire; to want". This same desiderative meaning is expressed in verbal compounds, too, except that in perfect participle constructions in such compounds, [caahnaa] would be best translated as "to try to ..." (Perfect participles refer to a single complete "act" and not to a "process".) Also, in perfect participle constructions the subject will be followed by [-nee], while [caahnaa] will agree with either the infinitive or the direct object. In the latter case, the infinitive may occur appositionally, agreeing with the direct object in gender and number. Thus all three following combinations are possible in Urdu.

mãĩ-nee juutee xariidnaa caahaa	I tried to buy shoes.
mãĩ-nee juutee xariidnaa caahee	ditto
mãĩ-nee juutee xariidnee caahee	ditto

However, of the three only the first and the last are preferred, and usually they do imply a little difference in emphasis. In the first, the verb agrees with the infinitive with which the direct object occurs conjointly, thus focussing attention on the act itself rather than the object involved in the act. In the last, both [caahnaa] and the infinitive agree with the direct object, and thus full emphasis is directed at the object and not the act. The second sentence is similar in emphasis to the third; it is, however, not so commonly used. Also, if the direct object is followed by a postposition, the infinitive will remain uninflected.

mãĩ-nee us-koo xariidnaa caahaa	I tried to buy it.

Other examples:

mãĩ haamid-see milnaa caahtaa thaa	I wanted to meet Hamid.
mãĩ-nee haamid-see milnaa caahaa	I tried to meet Hamid.
woo kuch kapRee dhulaanaa caahtii hai	She wants to get some clothes washed.
woo boolnaa caahtaa thaa	He wanted to speak.

us-nee boolnaa caahaa	He tried to speak.
mãĩ un-see milnaa caahũũgaa	I'd like to meet him.

176. Direct infinitive of the primary verb plus [caahiyee]: Such compounds express the idea of something being obligatory to someone. The real subject will be followed by [-koo], while [caahiyee] will be used for singular agreement and [caahiyẽẽ] for plural. No distinction for gender is made in such constructions. Transitive verbs will occur either conjointly with their objects or in appositional function, agreeing with them in gender and number. If, however, the direct object is followed by a postposition, the infinitive will remain uninflected.

mujhee in kapRõõ-koo dhulaanaa caahiyee	I ought to get these clothes washed.
mujhee jaanaa caahiyee	I ought to go.
tum-koo un-see milnaa caahiyee	You ought to meet him.
un-koo juutee xariidnaa caahiyee	He should buy shoes.
un-koo juutee xariidnee caahiyẽẽ	ditto

Another combination, [juutee xariidnaa caahiyẽẽ], is also accepted but not preferred. [caahiyee] or [caahiyẽẽ] express the idea of "ought to" or "should", and usually occur by themselves. The only expansion that is allowed is with past auxiliary, [thaa].

tumhẽẽ jaanaa caahiyee thaa	You ought to have gone.
un-koo woo kitaabẽẽ xariidnii caahiyee thĩĩ	He ought to have bought those books.

Note the fact that in the last sentence the number agreement is expressed only once, in the auxiliary, and not in [caahiyee].

177. Beside occurring with infinitives in verbal compounds, [caahiyee] and [caahiyẽẽ] can also occur with other nouns. It will still be an indirect construction, but the meaning will be "to need something" rather than "ought to do something".

mujhee eek mulaazim caahiyee	I need a servant.
us-koo kuch kitaabẽẽ caahiyẽẽ	He needs some books.
tum-koo kyaa caahiyee	What do you want?
Cf. tum kyaa caahtee hoo	ditto

The use of [caahiyee], however, imples more intensity in the "desire" than the latter construction. Other examples:

aap-koo safar-kee liyee kitnaa rupyaa caahiyee	How much money do you need to travel?
mujhee eek naii saaRii caahiyee	I need a new sari. OR I want a new sari.

178. Direct infinitive of the primary verb plus [hoonaa]: Such verbal compounds require indirect constructions. The various forms of [hoonaa] occur only by themselves, and of these the auxiliaries more commonly than the participles, the conjunctive participle being not allowed at all. The idea expressed is again of something being obligatory, but now to a lesser degree than with [caahiyee]. The situational equivalents of such verbal compounds would be constructions with "to have to ..." rather than "ought to ..."

mujhee jaanaa hai	I have to go.
mujhee jaanaa caahiyee	I ought to go.

The infinitives of transitive verbs will occur either conjointly with their objects, and therefore uninflected, or appositionally, agreeing with them in gender and number, unless the objects are followed by a postposition, in which case the infinitives will remain uninflected. As for the forms of [hoonaa], they will agree, in the first case, with either the infinitive or its object, and, in the second case, with only the object. Thus all three of the following sentences are equally correct.

un-koo kitaabẽẽ xariidnaa hai	He has to buy books.
un-koo kitaabẽẽ xariidnaa hãĩ	ditto
un-koo kitaabẽẽ xariidnii hãĩ	ditto

Also

mujhee makaan-kii marammat karnaa hai	I have to repair the house.

mujhee makaan-kii marmmat karnii hai	ditto

The appositional use of infinitives, however, is preferred in case of transitive primary verbs.

mujhee kitaabẽẽ xariidnii hãĩ	I have to buy books.
tum-koo un-see kab milnaa thaa	When did you have to meet him?
aap-koo kal zaruur aanaa hoogaa	You will have to come tomorrow.
agar aap-see milnaa na hootaa, too mãĩ na aataa	I wouldn't have come if I didn't have to meet you.
tum-koo un-see na milnaa thaa	You shouldn't have met him.

The last sentence is less emphatic in its assertion than [tum-koo un-see na milnaa caahiyee thaa].

179. Direct infinitive of the primary verb plus [paRnaa]: The grammar of such verbal compounds is identical with the grammar of [hoonaa] compounds discussed above (Section 178). [paRnaa] expresses a stronger sense of obligation than does [hoonaa]; it implies a compulsion from the outside rather than just a sense of necessity felt by its subject.

aap-koo un-see milnaa paReegaa	You will have to meet him.
un-koo kal yahãã-see jaanaa paRaa	He was forced to leave this place yesterday.
is-liyee mujhee kuch kitaabẽẽ beecnii paRĩĩ	Therefore I was compelled to sell some books.
agar aap-koo karnaa paRtaa too aap-koo bhii maaluum-hootaa	You'd have known too, if you had been forced to do it.
aaxir unhẽẽ ahmad-koo rooknaa paRaa	Finally, he was compelled to stop Ahmad.

180. Oblique infinitive of the primary verb plus [lagnaa]: This verbal compound conveys the idea of the commencement of an act. The infinitive of the primary verb remains in its oblique form, ending in [-ee]; the inflections are shown in [lagnaa].

laRkee šoor karnee-lagee	The boys began to make noise.
woo hameešaa roonee-lagtaa hai	He always begins to cry.
agar woo kuch kahnee-lagee too uTh-kar calee-aanaa	If she begins to say something, get up and leave.

181. Oblique infinitive of the primary verb plus [deenaa]: In this combination, [deenaa] adds, to the meaning of the primary verb, the idea of "permission to do the same".

unhõõ-nee ahmad-koo jaanee-diyaa	They let Ahmad go.
agar woo mujhee kuch kahnee-deetee	If he had allowed me to say something ...
is šoor-nee tamaašaa nahĩĩ hoonee-diyaa	This noise didn't let the show go on.

The noun receiving permission will always be followed by the postposition [-koo] unless it is an inanimate noun and the accompanying verb does not imply any other direct or indirect object.

It should be noted that though such compounds will be used to translate English "Let ..." constructions, the particular form [deenaa] will depend upon the attitude of the speaker toward the addressee, for it will be some kind of imperative agreeing with the particular second person reference. An innocuous phrase like "Let the sun set, etc." can be translated with four different imperative forms of [deenaa].

suuraj Duubnee-dee	Let the sun set and then...
suuraj Duubnee-doo	ditto
suuraj Duubnee-dẽẽ	ditto
suuraj Duubnee-diijiyee	ditto

The second and fourth forms, however, are more commonly used than the other two.

182. Oblique infinitive of the primary verb plus [paanaa]: Some mention of such compounds has already been made in Section 174 above. One can add that the use of [paanaa] in such compounds gives an effect somewhat opposite of what is produced by [deenaa]: the latter means "to let; to allow"; the former means "to be allowed".

mãĩ jaanee paayaa	I was allowed to go. OR I found it possible to go.
Cf. us-nee mujhee jaanee diyaa	He let me go.

Other examples:

tum nahĩĩ jaanee paaoogee	You won't find it possible to go.
raat nahĩĩ hoonee paaii thii ki ...	The night has not yet begun when ...

Usually such compounds are replaced by the combination, root plus [paanaa], discussed in Section 174, except when the primary verb is [hoonaa], in which case oblique infinitive is preferred.

183. The oblique infinitive of a verb can also occur with verbs of motion, such as [jaanaa; aanaa; pahõcnaa; nikalnaa], and with such verbs as [baiThnaa] and [uThnaa], in which case the combinations will simply indicate that the two acts were closely related in the sense that the act indicated by the second verb was done in order to perform the act expressed by the first verb.

tum un-see milnee kab jaaoogee	When will you go to see him?
woo jab kaam karnee niklaa	When he set out to do the work ...
woo un-koo maarnee uThii thii ki ...	She had just go up to beat them when ...

Note the fact that the second verb in each instance is intransitive and that its subject is understood to perform the act expressed by the first verb, too.

184. Imperfect participle of the primary verb plus [rahnaa]: In such compounds, [rahnaa] adds to the primary verb its own meaning, "to remain". The compounds express that an act was done over a stretch of time either continuously, without a break, or frequently, with some breaks in between. However, usually it is the first.

woo cup-caap khaanaa khaataa rahaa	He continued to eat in silence.

tum yũũ kab-tak laRtee rahoogee	How long will you continue to fight in this manner.
woo kyõõ har waqt laRtii rahtii hai	Why does she fight all the time.

Note the fact that the participle agrees with the subject in gender and number, while the tense and mode is expressed by [rahnaa]. (See following sections for further discussion.)

185. Imperfect participle of the primary verb plus [jaanaa]: The participle again agrees with subject in gender and number, while the tense and mode are expressed by [jaanaa]. The idea expressed is again of continuity, but with a difference: [jaanaa], rather than [rahnaa], will be used (1) when the sentence refers to two acts which are not only continuous at one time but also closely related or dependent, and (2) when the continuity of those two acts is actually understood to be limited to a particular time stretch and not meant to be true as a general statement.

A.	tum gaanee gaatee jaaoo, mãĩ likhtaa jaaũũgaa	You sing the songs, I'll write them down.
B.	tum gaanee gaatee rahoo, mãĩ likhtaa jaaũũgaa	You keep singing the songs, I'll write them down.
C.	tum gaanee gaatee rahoo, mãĩ likhtaa rahũũgaa	You keep singing songs, I'll continue to write.
D.	tum too hameešaa gaanee gaatee rahtee hoo	You are always singing songs.

In A the two acts are closely related and they will also begin together. The closeness remains in B, too, --the writing will be of the songs that are being sung, -- though the use of [rahnaa] indicates that the singing has already begun. While in A the relationship between the two acts is unambiuously expressed, it is not so clear in C. The latter may refer to two completely independent acts, too, which would be done simultaneously despite each other. In D, [rahnaa] cannot be replaced by [jaanaa].

186. Perfect participle of the primary verb plus [karnaa]:

Such verbal compounds also express continuity, but of another type. Here the act is more often expressed to occur repeatedly or frequently, at intervals of time, and not so often continuously without a break. All verbs except for [jaanaa] occur in such compounds in their perfect participle form, masculine, direct, which remains uninflected. [jaanaa] has a special form, [jaayaa], which also remains unchanged.

tum wahãã jaayaa karoo	You should go there often.
mãĩ aksar un-kee paas jaayaa kartii thii	I used to visit him quite often.
woo aap-kee paas har haftee aayaa karẽẽgii	She will come to visit you every week.

In many instances, verbal compounds with [karnaa] can be replaced by verbal compounds made by adding [rahnaa] to the imperfect participle of the verb, but usually [karnaa] will be used to express a "frequent" act, and [rahnaa] for a "continuous" act.

187. Perfect participle of the primary verb plus [jaanaa]: Such constructions have a wide range of meaning, dependent upon whether the primary verb is transitive or intransitive and certain other matters. In many instances such compounds express a meaning' similar to that of [saknaa] constructions, and we will be therefore always comparing the two. For that reason, it is important that we mention one type of [saknaa] construction that we did not discuss before.

188. Consider the following sentences.

	yee kaam un-see nahĩĩ hoo-saktaa	He cannot do this work.
Cf.	woo yee kaam nahĩĩ kar-saktee hãĩ	He cannot do this work.

The first sentence expresses an inability inherent in the agent (followed by the postposition [-see]), while in the second the inability is implied to be due to something outside of the agent. Two things are to be noted about the first sentence:

it contains an intransitive primary verb, and this verb has, beside its grammatical subject, an agent which is indicated by the postposition [-see]. This agent, however, is a primary agent and not secondary, though in other sentences it can be a secondary agent. Sentences with two agents generally do not have this kind of [saknaa] compound. Thus,

mujh-see yee kaam hoo-saktaa hai	This work can be done by me.
yee kaam mašiin-see hoo-saktaa hai	This work can be done by a machine.
But, mãĩ yee kaam mašiin-see kar-saktaa hũũ	I can do this work with a machine.

In Urdu, however, it is preferred not to use this construction with secondary agents, but replace it with a perfect participle plus [jaanaa] construction, i.e.,

yee kaam mašiin-see kiyaa jaa-saktaa hai.

189. Turning to our verbal compounds with [jaanaa], we can best explain them by setting up four groups; two with a primary agent in its direct case form, and two with a primary agent that is followed by the postposition [-see].

190. Perfect participles of intransitive primary verbs can occur agreeing with the direct case agent in gender and number, followed by a similarly inflect imperfect participle form of [jaanaa] and some auxiliary, usually the present.

aap Thairiyee, kaam abhii huaa jaataa hai	Please wait a minute, the work will be done soon.
aap kahtee hãĩ, too ham baiThee jaatee hãĩ	All right, because you say, we shall sit down.

In both sentences the act referred to is to happen soon after the speech act. Such constructions will never refer to an act which has already occurred. In the following sentence a past auxiliary is used but the act referred to remains only a potential.

leekin un-kee aanee-see saaraa kaam bigRaa jaataa thaa	But, if he were to come, everything was going to be ruined.

191. With a direct case subject, perfect participles of transitive verbs can occur agreeing with it in gender and number and followed by [jaanaa], inflected for tense and mode. These constructions are usually referred to as passives, and they do consistently express a passive meaning.

yee kaam kab kiyaa jaaeegaa	When will this work be done?
saaree mehmaan zamiin-par biThaa-diyee gaee	All the guests were made to sit on the ground.
caarõõ taraf-kii diiwaarẽẽ giraa-dii gaĩĩ	The walls on all four sides were torn down.

It is also possible, however, for the subject of these passive constructions to occur followed by the postposition [-koo], in which case the participle as well as the rest of the verbal phrase will always show masculine, singular agreement. This is usually done when the sentence expresses a complete and finished act, or when one wishes to emphasize the act rather than the subject.

diiwaarõõ-koo giraa-diyaa gayaa	The walls were torn down.
is saamaan-koo bhii wahãã-see phẽẽk-diyaa jaaeegaa	These things will also be thrown out of there.
agar un-koo band nahĩĩ kiyaa gayaa to burii baat hoogii	It would be a bad thing, if he isn't locked up.

It should be kept in mind that the subject of such a passive construction is not is real "agent"; it is what actually would occur as the object of the same verb in its non-passive constructions. The idea of a primary agent is not expressed in Urdu passive constructions; a secondary agent, though, may be indicated by using the postposition [-see]. (Also see Section 193)

diiwaarõõ-koo TraikTar-see giraa-diyaa gayaa	The walls were pulled down with the help of a tractor.

If the mention of a primary agent is important for expressing the idea, an appropriate active construction will always be used.

mãĩ-nee diiwaarõõ-koo TraikTar-see giraa-diyaa	I pulled down the walls with a tractor.

192. Perfect participles of intransitive verbs can occur in verbal compounds with [jaanaa], with their real subjects indicated by the postposition [-see]. The entire verbal phrase will always have masculine, singular agreement. These constructions usually occur with some negative particle, and express in such instances some inherent inability on the part of the subject to perform the act.

mujh-see leeTaa nahĩĩ jaataa	I am unable to lie down. OR I find it impossible to lie down.
ab too doo qadam bhii nahĩĩ calaa jaataa	We can't even take two more steps now.

In such compounds, [jaanaa], as a primary verb, will have its special form, [jaayaa].

193. Perfect participles of transitive verbs can occur in verbal compounds with [jaanaa], with their real subjects indicated by the postposition [-see]. The verbal phrase will agree with what would be considered its direct object in active constructions, or will remain in masculine, singular if no direct object is implied. Such constructions also usually occur with a negative particle, and express an inability on the part of the subject to perform the act.

mujh-see too yee kitaab nahĩĩ paRhii jaatii	I find it impossible to read this book.
is roošnii-mẽẽ too mujh-see nahĩĩ paRhaa jaataa	I find it impossible to read in this light.

Cf.	is roošnii-mẽẽ too mãĩ nahĩĩ paRh-saktaa	I cannot read in this light.
	mujh-see yee kaam nahĩĩ kiyaa jaataa	I am finding it impossible to do this work.
Cf.	mujh-see yee kaam nahĩĩ hoo-saktaa	I can't do this work.
Cf.	mãĩ yee kaam nahĩĩ kar-saktaa	ditto

The above, however, is true of constructions in which the transitive verb is not occurring in its causative forms. If it is a causative form that is being used, especially a double-causative, the meaning changes, and the sentence begins to look like any other passive, with its primary agent indicated by the postposition [-see].

	us dhoobii-see qamiizẽẽ nahĩĩ dhooii jaatĩĩ	That washerman is unable to wash the shirts.
Cf.	us dhoobii-see qamiizẽẽ nahĩĩ dhulwaaii jaatĩĩ	It is not proper to have that washerman wash the shirts. OR It isn't proper to get the shirts washed by that washerman.

Other examples:

un loogõõ-see bahot kaam karwaayaa jaaeegaa	Those people will be made to do a lot of work.
is mulk-mẽẽ aurtõõ-see bahot kaam karwaayaa jaataa hai	Women are made to do a lot of work in this country.

The fact that such compounds with double-causative verbs can occur without a negative particle makes their similarity with simple passives quite clear, but the difference in meaning between the two should not be ignored, either.

194. Perfect participles of transitive verbs can occur in their masculine oblique forms, followed by an imperative form of [jaanaa].

ai laRkiyoo, isii tarah gaaee-jaaoo	O girls, continue to sing like this.
aap un-see milee-jaaiyee	You continue to meet with him.

These constructions can be replaced by imperfect participle plus [rahnaa] compounds.

aap un-see miltee rahiyee	You continue to meet with him.

195. The English verb "to have", in its meaning of "to posses something", does not have an equivalent verb in Urdu. Instead, the "having" of something is indicated by three different constructions.

1. If the object whose "possessing" or "having" is being indicated is an abstract noun, the following indirect construction is used.

mujh-koo waqt hai	I have time.
un-koo aaj buxaar hai	They have a fever today.
aap-koo kab chuTTii hoogii	When will you have some spare time?

2. If the object whose "possessing" or "having" is being indicated is a non-transferable thing or person such as "father", "uncle", "eyes", etc., the following indirect construction will be used: that object will be the grammatical subject of the verb [hoonaa], while the noun indicating its "possessor" will be followed by the postposition [-kaa].

meeree doo cacaa hAI	I have two uncles.
un-kii kitnii bahnEE thII	How many sisters did he have?
us-kii sirf eek AAkh hai	He has only one eye.

3. If the object whose "possession" or "having" is being indicated is a transferable thing or person, it will be the grammatical subject of the verb [hoonaa], while its "possessor" will be indicated by the postposition [-kee paas].

un-kee paas kuch kitaabẽẽ hãĩ	They have a few books.
hamaaree-paas kooii naukar nahĩĩ	We don't have a servant.
ahmad-kee paas doo rupyee thee	Ahmad had two rupees.

It may be pointed out that while "servant" is considered a transferable person, "teacher" is not.

aap-kee kooii ustaad hãĩ?	Do you have a teacher?

196. Nominal compound verbs: Beside the compounds discussed so far in which both the elements were some kind of verbal forms, there are other very compounds in which an auxiliary verb is preceded by a noun or an adjective or an adverb. In such compounds adjectives occur in appositional function either inflected to agree with the object or left uninflected, in masculine, singular if the object is followed by some postposition. The adverbs in such compounds are usually those which are actually nouns but occur mostly in adverbial function, and which in these compounds occur as nominals. Because of these reasons, we refer to such compounds as nominal compound verbs. [karnaa] is the most common auxiliary verb in such compounds; less common are [khaanaa], [deenaa], [hoonaa], [leenaa], [maarnaa], [uThaanaa], and [paRnaa].

These are all idiomatic constructions, and the student must learn the grammar of each separately. Basically, they are of two types; in the first type, the nominal element determines the grammatical agreement of the verb; in the second, the nominal element occurs in appositional function, agreeing when possible with the subject. In our glossary, we have indicated the second type by putting a hyphen between the nominal element and the auxiliary verb. In all cases, their grammar has been explained with the help of symbols discussed in the introduction to the glossary.

Examples:

1.	taariif karnaa : NF :	to praise X [-kii]
	mãĩ-nee un-kee gaanee-kii taariif kii	I praised his song.
2.	pasand-karnaa : N :	to like, admire
	mãĩ-nee un-kaa gaanaa pasand-kiyaa	I admired his song.

3.	pasand-aanaa : K :	to like
	mujhee un-kaa gaanaa pasand-aayaa	I liked his song.
4.	isteemaal karnaa : NM :	to use X [-kaa]
	us-nee kisii dawaa-kaa isteemaal nahĩĩ kiyaa	He didn't use any medicine.
5.	isteemaal-karnaa : N :	to use
	us-nee kooii dawaa isteemaal nahĩĩ kii	He didn't use any medicine.

197. To conclude our discussion of verbal constructions, we shall make some remarks about the important matter of grammatical agreement between a verb and its subject or subjects, and other related things. We have discussed some of these in Sections 124 and 125; the following remarks are to supplement the above.

198. In direct constructions, if the single subject is not followed by [-nee], the verb agrees with it in gender and number. If however, there are two or more subjects to agree with, there are other rules.

1. The verb can agree in gender and number with the nearest subject, if no personal names are being used in that function. Though we can find sentences in which personal pronouns or other human subjects occur with the verb agreeing with only one of them, they are not so common. It is mostly with non-human subjects that the verb agrees with only the nearest one.

2. If personal names or human subjects are involved, the verb will be in feminine plural, if all the subjects are feminine, otherwise in masculine plural.

3. In both cases, however, it is usual, if the context allows, to use after the subjects such words as [doonõõ], "both", [caarõõ], "all the four", [sab], "all", in which case the verb will agree in the same manner as in 2 above.

caaee aur kaafii xatm hoo-gaii	Tea and coffee are finished.
aaj-kal sirf liicii aur xarbuuzaa miltaa hai	One can get only lichis and melons these days.

ab too liicii aur xarbuuzaa doonõõ nahĩĩ miltee	Both lichis and melons are not available now.
haamid aur saliim baazaar gaee	Hamid and Salim went to the market.
haamid aur un-kii biiwii baazaar gaee	Hamid and his wife went to the market.
najmaa aur suhailaa baazaar gaĩĩ	Najma and Suhaila went to the market.
aaj šaam-koo doo laRkee aur tiin laRkiyãã aaẽẽgee	Two boys and three girls will come this evening.
inglainD, fraans aur amriikaa, tiinõõ is baat-par muttafiq na thee	England, France and America, all three were in disagreement on this matter.

199. In direct constructions, if the subject is followed by [-nee], the verb agrees in gender and number with the nearest object unless that object is followed by "cumulative" words such as [doonõõ], [sab], etc., or by the postposition [-koo]. If the objects are followed by a "cumulative" word, the verb will be in feminine plural, in case of all feminine objects, and in masculine plural in all other instances. If, on the other hand, the objects, with or without a cumulative word, are followed by the postposition [-koo], the verb will be in masculine singular. (Also see Section 200 below.)

mãĩ-nee eek qalam aur doo kitaabee xariidĩĩ	I bought one pen and two books.
us-nee mujhee doo keelee aur eek naarangii dii	He gave me two bananas and one orange.
mãĩ-nee eek laRkaa aur eek laRkii deekhii	I saw a boy and a girl.
mai-nee saliim aur najmaa-koo deekhaa	I saw Saleem and Najma.
unhõõ-nee apnii laRkiyõõ-koo wahaa nahĩĩ bheejaa	They didn't send their daughters there.

200. In indirect constructions the rules are same as in Section 197 above.

mujhee eek qalam aur eek kitaab caahiyee	I want a pen and a book.
un-kee paas eek naarangii aur doo keelee thee	He had two bananas and one orange.
us-koo kuch hairat aur kuch afsoos huaa	He felt some amazement and some sorrow.

201. With reference to sentences in which [-nee] occurs after the subject, it should be pointed out that if the objects are to be followed by the postposition [-koo], two supplementary rules are observed.

1. If the two objects are not connected with a conjunction, the first object will be in direct plural, if masculine, and direct singular, if feminine.

	mãĩ-nee apnee bhaai bahen-koo deekhaa	I saw my brother and sister.
	mãĩ-nee apnee bhaaii bahnõõ-koo deekhaa	I saw my brothers and sisters.
Cf.	mãĩ-nee apnee bhaaiyõõ aur bahnõõ-koo deekhaa	ditto

2. If such words as [doonõõ], [sab], etc., are used, the objects usually occur in their direct case forms, but often they may anticipate the postposition by occurring in the oblique.

	us-nee woo keelaa aur naarangii doonõõ-koo meez-par rakh-diyaa	He placed both the banana and the orange on the table.
Or	us-nee us keelee aur naarangii doonõõ-koo meez-par rakh-diyaa	ditto

Consider the following examples.

*1. us-nee woo sab keelee aur naarangiyãã baahar phẽẽk-dĩĩ

*2. us-nee un sab keelõõ aur naarangiyõõ-koo baahar phẽẽk-diyaa

3. us-nee woo keelee aur naarangiyãã doonõõ baahar phẽẽk-diyee

4. us-nee woo keelee aur naarangiyãã doonõõ-koo baahar phẽẽk-diyaa

*5. us-nee un keelõõ aur naarangiyõõ doonõõ-koo baahar phẽẽk-diyaa

6. us-nee woo keelee aur naarangiyãã sab baahar phẽẽk-diyee
7. us-nee woo keelee aur naarangiyãã sab-koo baahar phẽẽk-diyaa
*8. us-nee un keelõõ aur naarangiyõõ sab-koo baahar phẽẽk-diyaa

All the eight sentences mean the same thing, "He threw out all those bananas and oranges." To complete the record, it can be added that in some people's speech we may find a ninth sentence.

us-nee keelee aur naarangiyãã sab baahar phẽẽk-dii [phẽẽk-dĩĩ], however, will not occur in sentence 3 above.

For this particular writer the forms marked with an asterisk are preferable over the others.

202. In sentences where two or more verbs have the same subject, the subject is usually not repeated. This is made possible by many devices, some of which we have discussed in our section on the conjunctive participle (Section 94) and in our discussion of the adverbial function of other participles (Sections 102ff., 126ff.). In other situations it is left to the context and the grammatical agreement shown by the verbs to make clear who the subject of the other verbs is. This is done even when transitive and intransitive verbs occur together in the same sentence. Sometimes even the occurrence of an indirect construction does not stop the elision of the subject, though of course all indirect constructions can be considered to be grammatically separate sentences. Consider the following examples; in each the elided real subject has been indicated within parentheses.

1.	mãĩ saat bajee soo-kar uThaa aur aaTh bajee (mãĩ-nee) naaštaa kiyaa	I got up at seven and ate my breakfast at eight.
2.	usee niind aa-rahii thii is-liyee (woo) jaa-kar leeT-gayaa	He was feeling sleepy, so he went and lay down.
3.	mãĩ xat likh-rahaa thaa ki (mujhee) uTh-kar yahãã aanaa paRaa	I was writing the letter when I had to get up and come here.

Similar, but more drastic elisions, can happen in conversations, for the context and grammatical agreement in the verbal phrase would usually be sufficient to make our meaning clear.

203. In Urdu no distinction is made between direct narration and indirect narration as it is in English. A speech can be quoted directly without any change in its tenses, and with any pronominal reference -- first, second, or third -- that may be appropriate in the context. The thing to keep in mind is that tenses and all time references in the quoted speech will usually be from the point of view of its actual speaker, and not from the point of view of the narrator. The exceptions would be cases with unambiguous contexts, in which case the tense of the verbal phrase would still be from the point of view of the speaker, but the time-word, if there is any in the sentence, may be changed to reflect the narrator's point of view. In every case a quotation will be introduced by the particle [ki].

1.	us-nee kahaa hai ki woo nahĨĨ aa-saktaa hai	He says that he can't come.
	us-nee kahaa hai ki mÃĨ nahĨĨ aa-saktaa hŨŨ	ditto
2.	kal too aap-nee kahaa thaa ki aaj aaẼẼgee	You said yesterday that you would come today.
	kal too aap-nee kahaa thaa ki kal aaŨŨgaa	ditto
3.	ahmad-see kahoo ki aaj baazaar na jaaee	Tell Ahmad not to go to the market today.
	ahmad-see kahoo ki aaj baazaar na jaaoo	ditto

204. Urdu uses for adverbial function both single words and longer phrases. There are words which occur only adverbially, and there are also nouns and adjectives which in their masculine, singular, oblique form occur as adverbs. The use of various participles in adverbial phrases has already been discussed in

Section 94, 102ff., and 126ff; other adverbial phrases are formed by adding postpositions to nouns, adjectives, and adverbs. These are mostly self-explanatory and need no further elaboration here. We shall give later a list of the more common postpositions.

Ordinarily Urdu adverbs precede the verbal phrase, usually preceding also the direct object of the verb if there is one. In case of more than one adverb, the adverb getting the most emphasis in the context will come closest to the verb. If no particular emphasis is to be indicated, adverb of time will come first, then adverb of manner, and lastly adverb of place.

woo kal mooTar-see lakhnauu jaaeegaa	He will go to Lucknow tomorrow by car.

Sometimes an adverb can precede even the subject of the verb; this would juxtapose that adverb with the adverb closest to the verb.

Repeated adjectives indicate a distributive effect, but repeated adverbs indicate an intensity in their meaning. Some adverbs, however, always occur repeated, e.g., [raftaa raftaa], "gradually". On the other hand, [aahistaa], "slowly", but [aahistaa aahistaa], "very slowly".

205. Adverbs of time: A few special problems should be mentioned with reference to adverbs of time. In adverbial phrases a noun will usually remain in its singular oblique form even when it is contextually plural.

woo caar ghanTee-mẽẽ aaeegaa	He will return in four hours.
Cf. woo eek ghanTee-mẽẽ isee Thiik-kar-saktaa hai	He can fix it in one hour.

An oblique plural form will be used mainly if the time unit referred to in the sentence has already been mentioned in the context or has been "particularized" in some other way.

un caar ghanTõõ-mẽẽ bahot kuch hoo-saktaa thaa	A lot could have happened in those four hours.
baaqii dinõõ-mẽẽ imtihaan-kii tayyarii karnaa	Prepare for the examination in the remaining days!

Frequently, however, the above distinction is lost, and we find the oblique plural form being used with no particular implication.

	bahot din-see	for quite a while
OR	bahot dinõõ-see	ditto

Another thing that should be mentioned is the use of the verb [bajnaa] in adverbial phrases.

	caar bajee hãĩ	It is four-o-clock.
Cf.	caar bajee aaiyee	Come at four.
	eek bajee aaiyee	Come at one.
Cf.	eek bajaa hai	It is one-o-clock.

In adverbial function, it is always [bajee], singular reference or plural, with or without a postposition.

tum eek bajee aaoo	You should come at one.
tum eek bajee-kee baad aaoo	You should come after one.

Some very common adverbs of time are made by adding the postposition [-koo] to the particular noun. Such nouns are: [subh], "morning", [din], "day", [šaam], "evening", [raat], "night", and all the days of the week as well as all dates.

šaam-koo aaiyee	Please come in the evening.
woo mangal-koo aayaa	He came on Tuesday.
kyaa aap pandraa-koo jaa-rahee hãĩ	Are you going on the fifteenth?

206. Adverbs of manner are mainly self-explanatory and require no elaboration. As mentioned earlier, they usually occur after adverbs of time and before adverbs of place.

207. Adverbs of place: These too are mainly self-explanatory. Place names usually occur uninflected, even when they end in [-aa]. Some more common place names, however, show inflected forms.

	woo kalkattee kab jaaeegaa	When will he go to Calcutta.
Cf.	woo paTnaa kab jaaeegaa	When will he go to Patna.

In case of common nouns, they usually occur in their singular oblique form to express the idea of "destination", but can be followed by the postposition [-koo]; for other purposes relevant postpositions are used.

woo ghar jaa-rahaa hai	He is going home.
woo saliim-kee ghar jaa-rahaa hai	He is going to Salim's house.
woo aagree-mẽẽ rahtaa hai	He lives in Agra.
dukaan-koo jaaiyee	Go to the shop.

But when the idea is not so much of "motion towards" but of "arrival at", it is common to use the postposition [-par].

jab woo un-kii dukaan-par aayaa	When he got to his shop ...

On the other hand, if "motion" is toward a person, Urdu uses the postposition [-kee paas].

woo un-kee paas gayaa	He went to him.
meeree-paas aaoo	Come to me. OR Come near me.

208. One set of forms deserves special mention. These we refer to as pronominal adverbs; they can be best understood in a chart of the type given below.

I	II	III	IV	Pronominal Reference
yahãã	idhar	aisee	ab	yee
wahãã	udhar	waisee	tab	woo
jahãã	jidhar	jaisee	jab	joo
kahãã	kidhar	kaisee	kab	kaun, kyaa

Column I shows adverbs of place; column II adverbs of direction; column III adverbs of manner; and column IV adverbs of time. The pronominal references indicate the relationship between the forms and also their pronominal function.

woo yahãã hai	He is here.
woo kab aayaa	When did he come?
woo caar bajee aayaa	He came at four-o-clock.

The remote forms also occur as correlatives for the relative pronominal adverbs.

jahãã haamid hai wahãã jaaiyee	Go where Hamid is.

Other adverbs, whether single forms or phrases, will simply be given in the glossary, in the same way as particles, conjunctions and interjections. They are mostly self-explanatory;

any exceptions will be discussed in the grammatical notes given with the texts.

209. Urdu postpositions perform the same function as the prepositions of English. Urdu postpositions are of several types: some are single words, others consist of two or more words. The first kind always occur after the word they are related to; the second kind also usually occur after the word they are related to, but sometimes -- though only rarely -- their second member may occur before it.

un kee baGair	without him
baGair un-kee	ditto

The second kind are also mostly self-explanatory. The first kind of postpositions, however, need some explanation. We shall discuss them below individually. (Of these [-nee] and [-kaa] have already been discussed and need not be mentioned here.)

210. [koo]: No one meaning of this most common postposition can be given. Below we shall try to list its most common functions.

It usually occurs after the indirect object of a verb.

us-koo kitaab diijiyee	Give him the book.
saliim-koo xat likhoo	Write a letter to Salim.

It occurs after the direct object of a verb if that direct object happens to be a personal pronoun or a proper name.

mãĨ nee tum-koo nahĨĨ deekhaa	I didn't see you.
saliim-koo mat maaroo	Don't beat Salim.

It occurs in what we call indirect constructions, to indicate the recipient of the results of the act, in our terminology "the real subject".

mujhee pasand hai	I like it.
un-koo buxaar hai	He has fever.
unhẽẽ chuTTii nahĨĨ	He doesn't have time.
mujhee tum-see muhabbat hai	I love you.

It occurs in such adverbial phrases as [šaam koo], "in the evening", and [dukaan koo], "to the shop".

211. [-see]: The more common translations are "from" and "with". But in some contexts it has no lexical meaning.

It occurs with some verbs to indicate their indirect objects. Some of the more common such verbs are: [kahnaa], "to say", [puuchnaa], "to ask", [baat karnaa], "to talk", [laRnaa], "to fight", and [milnaa], "to meet".

haamid-see kahoo	Speak to Hamid.
un-see milnee jaataa hUU	I'm going to meet him.

In our glossary we have indicated such verbs by making the postposition [-see] a part of their meaning. E.g.,

milnaa	to meet with X [-see]

It occurs after nouns and pronouns to indicate motions away "from" them.

yahAA-see jaaoo	Go away from here.
kamree-see nikal-kar	After coming out of the room...

It occurs to indicate what is usually referred to as the "ablative" case of nouns and pronouns.

woo kahAA-see hAI	Where is he from?

It indicates agents.

phal caaquu-see kaaToo	Cut the fruit with a knife.
darzii-see silwaaii huii qamiiz	the shirt which was sewn by the tailor

It occurs in constructions in which comparison is made between two nouns.

saliim haamid-see acchaa hai	Salim is better than Hamid.
saliim sab-see acchaa hai	Salim is best.

It occurs in various adverbial phrases, such as [zoor-see], "loudly", [-see niicee], "below".

212. [-tak]: Usual meaning is "upto, to the extent of", but in many instances it will be translated by some other preposition of English or by nothing. It indicates motion to the boundaries of some thing or place.

yahăă-see wahăă-tak	From here to there.

But it also occurs in such sentences as

	jab yee xabar mujh-tak pahŏcii	When this news reached me...
OR	woo bas šahar-tak gayaa hai	He has just gone to the city, (implying that he won't be long coming back.

Other examples:

woo šaam-tak kaam kartaa rahaa	He kept working until the evening.
kal-tak zaruur mil-jaaee	It should be available by tomorrow.

213. [-mĕĕ]: It is used both for motion, "inward", and location, "inside".

woo ghar-mĕĕ hăĭ	He is in the house.
kamree-mĕĕ jaaoo	Go into the room.

It differs from the postposition [-kee andar] only in this respect that the latter carries more emphatically the idea of something being fully "inside" of something else, and is therefore less used for inward motion.

woo kamree-kee andar band hai	He is locked inside the room.

214. [-par]: The underlying idea is of motion "upward", but in many instances the use of [-par] is more idiomatic, as in adverbial phrases mentioned earlier (Section 207).

un-kii dukaan-par jaaoo	Go to his store.

Or,

ašook-nee kalinga-par hamlaa kiyaa	Ashoka attacked Kalinga.
woo kaam-par gayaa hai	He has gone to his work.
mujhee us-par rahm aataa hai	I feel pity for him.

Such idiomatic uses have always been indicated in our glossary.

215. Other postpositions are mostly self-explanatory and therefore will be listed on occurrence in the glossary itself or discussed in the supplementary notes given with the texts.

216. Most of the learned vocabulary and a great number of very common words in Urdu are of Perso-Arabic origins; otherwise these two languages have exerted little or no influence on the grammatical structure of Urdu. We use the term "Perso-Arabic" in view of the fact that even the words of Arabic origin have come into Urdu only through Persian, quite often with some significant change due to this process. We shall try to discuss in the following sections the most common of these Perso-Arabic elements in Urdu. The knowledge and recognition of the origin of a word will often help the student in spelling it correctly and also in recognizing other related words, such as those derived from the same Arabic root. We have not tried to be comprehensive and have left out all that would be considered marginal in Urdu, in order not to unduly clutter our statements. At many places we have explained things as they now occur in Urdu, not bothering to trace their original usage in Persian or Arabic. (Unless specifically indicated otherwise, all the examples are of the Urdu usage of these borrowed forms.)

217. The Arabic Definite Article [al-]: In contrast with Urdu and Persian, Arabic has a separate definite article which occurs before nouns or adjectives turned nouns. It is pronounced variously, but always written as an [alif] followed by a [laam]. Arabic indefinite nouns occur with a final [-n]; there is no separate indefinite article. Thus Arabic:

kitaabun	a book
al-kitaabu	the book
ruuhun	a spirit
ar-ruuhun	the spirit

The [a] ([alif]) of the definite article is not pronounced if the article is preceded by some word which is in construct with the noun made definite by the article. In such cases, the final vowel of the preceding word will join with the [l] of the article. The preceding word, if a noun or adjective, will end in either [-u] or [-i] or [-a], the nominative, genitive, and accusative endings of Arabic, respectively. Thus Arabic:

ar-ruuhi-l-qudsi	the holy spirit (genitive)
ad-daaru-l-xilaafah	the capital (nominative)
al-baita-l-muqaddasi	lit., the sacred house (accusative)

There are just a very few common words in Urdu in which the definite article occurs in the beginning. Some such words are

allaah	Allah
al-maaruuf ba-	known as

Usually this article occurs in nominal or adjectival compounds in which the second member of the compound is made definite. In Arabic the first member of such compounds will have the proper case ending depending on the context, in Urdu, however, it is always the nominative ending, [-u]. Only perhaps in earlier highly Arabicised writings can we find examples of the other case endings. Likewise, in Arabic, the second member always has the genitive ending, [-i]; this ending, however, has been lost in Urud, and the last member usually occurs in its uninflected form. Thus Arabic [daaru-l-kutubi] has become in Urdu [daarul-kutub], "library". Or, Arabic [Gariibu-l-watani] is pronounced in Urdu as [Gariibul-watan], "one who is away from his homeland". Of course there is no difference in the way these words are written in the two languages.

Just as the [a] of the definite article can be assimilated to the final vowel of the preceding word, similarly the [l] of the definite article is also assimilated to the initial consonant of the following word if that consonant happens to be written by one of the following letters.

[tee, see, daal, zaal, ree, zee, siin, šiin, swaad, zwaad, tooee, zooee, laam, nuun]

The letter assimilated to is then doubled in pronunciation. These letters are called the sun letters; the other letters which do not require assimilation are called the moon letters.

	abdur-rahmaan	a proper name
but	abul-kalaam	a proper name
	šamsun-nabii	a proper name
but	muiinul-haq	a proper name

It can be pointed out that such compounds occur mostly as Muslim proper names in Urdu; only in highly Arabicised writings would they be found occuring in their basic meaning.

218. [tanwiin]: There are a number of adverbial forms in Urdu which are of Arabic origin and end in the syllable [-an]. The latter is indicated in writing by the letter [alif] and the sign of [tanwiin] which is in Urdu always a double [zabar] over the [alif]. Sometimes the Arabic noun may not be found to occur in Urdu in its original form -- the pronunciation and/or the spelling having changed in the process

of adaptation -- but the adverbial form will usually show the original form of the word.

haqiiqat	"reality"	haqiiqatan	"in fact"
ibtidaa	"beginning"	ibtidaa'an	"in the beginnin
dafaa	"times"	daf'atan	"suddenly"

Likewise [fauran], [taqriiban], [Galiban], etc. See also the discussion of [tanwiin] in the section on script.

219 In most cases Arabic words can be shown to have been derived from a tri-lettered root. It will help the student a lot if he can learn to recognize Arabic roots and the related derived forms.

In many cases a student can recognize an Arabic word if he bears in mind that the following letters of the alphabet occur only in words of Arabic origin.

[see, baRii hee, zaal, swaad, zwaad, tooee, zooee, ain, qaaf]

Thus if he finds in any word any of the above nine letters he should consider that word as of Arabic origin.

As to the question of recognizing the Arabic tri-lettered root, one fact to bear in mind is that all of the above mentioned nine letters occur only as root letters and never as secondary letters or infixes of Arabic. In general Arabic words are formed from the tri-lettered root by the addition of one or more of the following letters.

[alif, tee, siin, miim, nuun, waaoo, yee]

Or by infixing various short vowels. Thus from the root [fee, ain, laam], usually referred to as [fa'ala] and used by the grammarians as the model root, we find such forms as [faa'il, maf'uul, mafaa'iil, infi'aal], and so forth. These two facts, combined with third that no alteration is allowed in the order of the root letters, will make clear to the student what the root letters of any given word are.

Below we shall discuss some of the more common derivative patterns of Arabic, but before we do that, it would be good to make one observation: the student will benefit a great deal by trying to keep a separate file of all the Arabic words that he learns and by arranging his file according to their roots. The recognition of this kind of relationship between words will help him in memorizing their unpredictable spellings and also in making correct guesses in case he happens to come across a related but unfamiliar word.

220. The tri-lettered root of Arabic is usually cited in dictionaries in its 3rd person singular masculine, active, Perfect, form. Thus Arabic:

fa'ala	he did

All the derived forms are put after the root. Of all the hundreds of possible forms not all are made in Arabic, and even of those which are formed, only a very few occur in Urdu commonly. Therefore a student should use the following information only to recognize the nature of the Arabic word and to help memorize its meaning, but not to form new words on its basis.

Arabic roots, as roots, can occur in various forms, and from each form of the root other derived forms will then be made differently and mean different things. For our limited purpose, however, it should be sufficient to know something of the paradigm of the first form (the simple form) of the root.

The active participle of the first form is made on the pattern [faa'il]. Thus

aalim	learned man
kaatib	scribe
jaabir	tyrant
naaqid	critic

The passive participle of the first form is made on the pattern [maf'uul]. Thus

maktuub	letter
maaluum	that which is known
majbuur	one who is tyrannized
mašGuul	busy

As for the second, third and other forms of the root, their active and passive participles are formed variously and it will serve no purpose to detail them here. One observation, however, should help the student. All the participles of the latter forms begin with the syllable [mu-]. Also, the active participles have the short vowel [-i-] in their last syllable, while the passive participles have the short vowel [-a-] in their last syllables. The last letter in each case being the last letter (radical) of the root. Thus

	muallim	teacher
	mudabbir	adviser, counselor
	mujaddid	revivalist
	musawwir	painter
	multamis	petitioner
but	muqaddas	sacred, sanctified
	musawwar	illustrated
	mujassam	embodied
	muntašar	scattered
	muxtasar	limited, restricted

221. **Arabic Nouns:** Arabic nouns are inflected for number (singular, dual, and plural), gender (masculine, and feminine), and case (nominative, accusative, and genitive). There are a number of things that a student of Urdu should bear in mind regarding the Arabic nouns as they are used in Urdu.

The genders of Arabic nouns have often been changed in Urdu. In Arabic the feminine nouns are generally recognizable by their ending [-at], written with a [chooTii hee] with two super-script dots. In Urdu, such words are usually written without the two super-script dots on the final [chooTii hee], thus changing the pronuncaition of the last syllable from [-at] to [-aa]. This, as we know, is the most common masculine ending in Urdu, and so wherever the meaning has allowed -- i.e., if the Indic synonym happened to be masculine -- the gender of the Arabic word has been changed from feminine to masculine. In other instances, however, the [chooTii hee] of the Arabic ending has been replaced by a final [tee]; in such words the Arabic gender has also been retained. Thus, if a student of of Urdu finds an "Arabic looking" word in Urdu ending in [-at], he can safely guess its gender to be feminine.

222. Many of the Arabic words -- and most of the Persian words, too -- have become so common in Urdu that they are now inflected in the same manner as the nouns of Indic origin. Thus

muaamlaa, muaamlee, muaamlõõ

There are other Arabic words, however, which are not inflected for number and case in the same way as the Indic words. In the case of these words we find that their original Arabic plurals are used, though with this restriction: the plurals remain uninflected for case in Urdu, even if they are followed by an Urdu postposition. Thus we find that the Arabic loan word [muaamlaa], "affair", can occur either as inflected in Urdu manner

in muaamlõõ-mẽẽ	in these affairs

or in its Arabic plural form, with no change for case.

in muaamlaat-mẽẽ	in these affairs

Likewise:

meerii xidmat-kaa	of my service
in makaanõõ-kaa	of these houses
in makaanaat-kaa	of these houses
yee makaanaat	these houses
yee makaan	these houses, this house

Connected with the matter discussed directly above, it should be borne in mind that the Arabic case endings are not used in Urdu.

In what follows we shall try to indicate certain rules that can help students recognize the relationships between the various forms of Arabic nouns and, to some extent, their gender and number. These rules, however, are not meant to help produce new forms. They are cursory, and apply only to the Urdu usage of Arabic words.

223. **Arabic Duals:** Arabic duals are made by adding di-syllabic endings [-aani] and [-aini] to the stems. Thus Arabic

waalidun	father
waalidaani	parents (nominative, dual)
waalidaini	parents (accusative and genitive, dual)

In some inexplicable way only the accusative, genitive forms of the dual have come to occur in Urdu, with the loss, however, of the last short vowel [-i]. Thus, of the above three forms, only the first and the third occur in Urdu; the form [waalidain] being used uninflected.

mEE un-kee waalidain-see milaa	I met with his parents.
aap-kee waalidain kahEE rahtee hai	Where do your parents live?
ai kaunain-kee maalik	O Master of the Two Worlds.

224. Arabic Purals: Arabic grammarians usually set up two kinds of plurals in Arabic: sound plurals and broken plurals. Sound plurals are made by adding certain endings to the stem forms, while the broken plurals are made by infixing certain vowels and/or by adding certain prefixes.

225. Sound Plurals: The masculine endings are

-uuna	nominative
-iina	accusative, genitive

Again, only the latter of the two endings is found in the Urdu usage of Arabic masculine nouns; the last short vowel is again dropped, too.

waaez	"preacher"	waaeziin	"preachers"
saabiq	"the former"	saabiqiin	"the formers"

The feminine endings are

-aatun	nominative
-aatin	accusative, genitive

In Urdu usage, however, the feminine sound plurals lose their case endings [-un,-in], and end in the syllable [-aat]. Again, they remain uninflected for case in Urdu.

Further, as far as Urdu usage is concerned, it should be borne in mind that the ending [-aat] does not necessarily indicate feminine gender. In Arabic there were only a few exceptions, but in Urdu, after the changes in spelling and due to the influence of synonyms that we mentioned before, this ending merely indicates that the noun in question is plural. After a little practice the student will be able to recover the singular form of that noun, but he will still have to learn the gender separately as far as the Urdu usage is concerned.

aayat (F) "Quranic verse"	aayaat
waaqi'aa (M) "event"	waaqi'aat
haadisaa (M) "accident"	haadisaat
sawaal (M) "question"	sawaalaat
tasawwur (M) "imagination"	tasawwuraat
ittifaaq (M) "chance"	ittifaaqaat
axbaar (M) "newspaper"	axbaaraat
harkat (F) "deed"	harkaat
xidmat (F) "service"	xidmaat
maxtuutaa (M) "manuscript"	maxtuutaat
makaan (M) "house"	makaanaat

This feminine sound plural ending [-aat] is often found to occur with Persian words, but never with words of Indic origins.

226. At this point another ending [-jaat] should be mentioned which is of Persian origin, and which should not be confused with the ending [-aat] discussed above. This

ending [-jaat] is added to those Arabic and Persian words that end in the letter [chooTii hee] and are not feminine. The last syllable of these words is written [-ah] but in normal Urdu pronunciation it is pronounced as [-aa]. Before the suffix [-jaat], however, the long vowel [aa] is shortened to [a]. The [chooTii hee] is still retained in writing.

meewaa (M) "nut, fruit"	meewajaat
kaar-xaanaa (M) "factory"	kaar-xaanajaat

227. Broken Plurals: Broken plurals of Arabic nouns are made by inserting different vowels between the radical consonants of the root and, quite often, by simultaneously adding a syllable at the beginning. The rules in Arabic numerous as well as exhaustive, but we cannot enumerate them here. We shall try only to show some of the more common patterns that occur in the Urdu usage

kitaab (F) "book"	kutub
rasuul (M) "prophet"	rusul

qalb (M) "heart"	quluub
amr (M) "matter"	umuur
ilm (M) "knowledge"	uluum

haakim (M) "ruler"	hukkaam
taajir (M) "merchant"	tujjar

šaxs (M) "person"	ašxaas
waqt (M) "time"	auqaat
tifl (M) "child"	atfaal
sabab (M) "reason"	asbaab
maraz (M) "disease"	amraaz
ruuh (F) "spirit"	arwaah

haadisaa (M) "accident"	hawaadis
qaaidaa (M) "rule"	qawaaid
risaalaa (M) "journal"	rasaail
jaziiraa (M) "island"	jazaair
waziir (M) "minister"	wuzaraa
šaa'ir (M) "poet"	šu'araa
faqiir (M) "beggar; saint"	fuqaraa
aalim (M) "scholar"	ulamaa
manzil (F) "storey; stages in a journey"	manaazil
madrasaa (M) "school"	madaaris
taswiir (F) "picture"	tasaawiir
diiwaan (M) "collected works"	dawaawiin
qaanuun (M) "law"	qawaaniin

228. In Arabic it is often possible that the same form can have two different plurals, and as often the two plurals can differ in meaning. If the singular form referred to two related things, a particular plural form may refer exclusively to only one of the two, the other to the other. Keeping this fact in mind and that the above mentioned patterns are not "productive" as far as Urdu is concerned, the student should try to learn to recognize the plurals as plurals, making sure of their special meanings whenever that be necessary. As we mentioned before, keeping a separate file of Arabic words will help in this endeavor.

Just as not all the plurals of Arabic words are found to occur in Urdu, similarly quite often the singular forms of some Arabic plurals may not occur in Urdu either. Quite often there may even be a difference in the meaning of the two. (See the paragraph above.) Below we give some examples of this type.

In Urdu [haalat], "condition", is a feminine noun, but its Arabic plural [haalaat] is considered masculine, and is often confused with [ahwaal], plural of [haal], "state of affairs; condition". At the same time, both [ahwaal] and [haalaat] generally mean "events; happenings; state of affairs".

Arabic [sabab], "reason", occurs as a masculine noun in Urdu, along with its plural, [asbaab]. [asbaab], however, has come to be treated in Urdu also as separate masculine, singular noun, meaning "baggage". Thus

us-kee asbaab	its reasons
us-kaa asbaab	his baggage

In Urdu we find the word [tulabaa], "students", being used in the plural. Its singular form, [taalib], does not occur in Urdu; the word for a single student being [taalib-e-ilm], lit., "seeker of knowledge". Similarly we find in Urdu such Arabic plural forms as

haaziriin (Mp)	members of the audience
šurafaa (Mp)	noblemen, nobles
amaa'idiin (Mp)	civic leaders
aulaad (F)	progeny
ma'aa'ib (Mp)	faults

but we do not find their singular forms functioning similarly in Urdu. The singular forms of the first three, [haazir, šariif, umdaa], occur only as adjectives. The singular forms of the latter two, [walad, ma'iibat], do not usually occur in Urdu. Another similar case is of the Persian word [diihaat], which itself is a combination of a Persian stem and an Arabic plural suffix. [diihaat] occurs in Urdu as a feminine, singular noun, meaning "countryside". The Persian singular, [diih], does not usually occur in Urdu.

229. In Arabic it is possible to make adjectives from nouns by adding the suffix [-ii]. The noun often undergoes some phonological modification, and often the ending is not just [-ii], but [-wii] or [-nii] depending on the phonological environment. The rules for these variants are too numerous to be discussed here.

insaan	"human being"	insaanii	"related to humanity'
ruuh	"spirit"	ruuhaanii	"spiritual"
jism	"body"	jisnaanii	"physical"
makkaa	"Mecca"	makkii	"belonging to Mecca"
dunyaa	"world"	dunyawii	"worldly"

230. In turn, from these relative adjectives discussed above, we can form abstract nouns by adding to them the suffix [-at]. Before this ending, the final syllable of the relative adjective will change from [-ii] to [-iy].

insaaniyat	humanism
mahbuubiyat	belovedness
mahjuubiyat	bashfulness

231. In discussing the Persian elements in Urdu we must bear one fact in mind: these elements were borrowed into Urdu from Classical Persian, and their rules in Urdu may be quite different from those in Modern Persian. This is especially true for the meanings of some of these borrowed words; the meaning retained in Urdu may often differ from what the word means in modern Persia today.

232. The most common feature borrowed from Persian into Urdu is the use of the [izaafat] (Persian [ezafeh]) for making

nominal as well as adjectival compounds. In writing, the [izaafat] will be indicated by adding a subscript [zeer] to the last letter of the first member of the compound. The first member will then be pronounced with a final [-e]. (In our transcription we are indicating [izaafat] compounds by writing [-e-] between the two members. Another common transcription has been [-i-], but the latter does not represent the Urdu pronunciation of today.) If the first member ends in a consonantal letter then the [zeer] is added directly underneath it. If, on the other hand, the first member ends in a vowel letter, there are different rules.

1. If the first member ends in either [alif] or [waaoo], (and if the final [waaoo] is not pronounced as a consonant), a [baRii yee] will be added in its independent form between the two members.

2. If the last letter of the first member of the compound is a [chooTii yee], a [hamzah] will be added above it.

3. If the last letter of the first member of the compound is a [chooTii hee], and if that [chooTii hee] is not pronounced as a consonant a [hamzah] will be added above the [chooTii hee].

In ordinary Urdu writing, however, only the latter three rules are followed and the [zabar] is generally omitted. But in poetry and in more careful calligraphy, all the rules will be followed.

The [izaafat] is used in Urdu only with Perso-Arabic words. Individual writers have sometimes tried to include Indic words in such compounds, but their innovations never gained popularity.

The [izaafat] compounds are basically of two types, depending on the nature of the second member of the compound which can be either a noun or an adjective. The first member is always a nominal of some kind, either a noun itself or a participle of some sort.

If the second member of the compound is a noun, the [izaafat] can often be translated as "of", i.e., [X-e-X1] can be translated as "X of X1". But equally as often some other preposition of English may be required. The primary purpose of the [izaafat], therefore, would be best described as that it serves to indicate that the first member of the compound is in some manner qualified by the second member.

saahab-e-xaanaa	master of the house
Gam-e-išq	sorrow of love
jaaduu-e-šab	night's magic
sadaa-e-šikast-e-dil	sound of the breaking of the heart
qalb-e-aašiq	the lover's heart
marGuub-e-xaatir	liked by the heart
zulf-e-yaar	beloved's tresses
šiiša-e-mai	flagon of wine
muftii-e-damišq	the Mufti of Damascus

In the second type of compounds, the second member is an adjective. In such cases, the [izaafat] does not have a separate meaning; it merely indicates that the adjective qualifies the preceding noun.

hayaat-e-jaaweed	immortal life
aah-e-sard	a cold sigh
cašm-e-niim-baaz	half-open eye
zulf-e-siyaah	black tresses
qalb-e-šikastah	the broken heart
tamaaša-e-nau-ba-nau	ever-new entertainment

Also consider the following.

baxiya-e-caak-e-gariibaa	stitchings in the opening of the collar
nigah-e-cašm-e-surma-saa	the glance from an eye painted with collyrium
aaiina-e-bee-mehrii-e-qaatil	evidence of the ruthlessness of the murderer

In the above examples werfind that the [izaafat] can be used to combine more than two words into fairly large compounds. Each larger compound, however, can be shown to consist of only two members at any given time; the second of the two can then be broken into two constituent parts, and so on.

233. In contrast with Urdu, Persian does have separate endings to indicate the comparative and superlative endings of adjectives. These are [-tar] and [-tariin], respectively. Though the comparative and superlative forms of some Persian adjectives have become quite common in Urdu, the endings themselves have not become common, and are never found to occur with Indic words. Some of these very common words are

beh-tar	better
bad-tar	worse
beh-tariin	best
kam-tar	less, lesser

A few of these Persian comparative forms also occur as adverbs in Urdu.

beeš-tar	mostly
zyaadaa-tar	mostly
kam-tar	scarcely

234. Beside the Indic word [aur], Urdu has another copulative particle which is indicated in writing by just the letter [waaoo]. This letter is a borrowing from Persian. If the word preceding this particle ends in a vowel, or if a distinct pause has been made after the preceding word even if it ended in a consonant, the [waaoo] of the particle will be pronounced as [-wa-]. If the preceding word ended in a consonant and no pause was made between it and the particle then the particle will be pronounced as [-o-].

aab-o-hawaa	the climate; lit., water and air
subh-o-šaam	morning and evening
maahii-wa-parind	fish and birds
naamii-wa-garaamii	famous and respected

235. Though Urdu has borrowed an overwhelming number of Persian nouns, the Persian plurals as such are not so common and, compared with the sound and broken plurals of Arabic, are hardly ever found in ordinary prose. Only in high literary prose do we come across words with Persian plural endings, [-aan] and [-haa]. At some time in Classical Persian, [-aan] was used with animate nouns, and [-haa] with only the inanimates. This distinction has now more or less disappeared in Persian, and is looked at as merely a matter of writing conventions. The same is true in Urdu. These borrowed nouns were originally genderless, but in Urdu they have been assigned genders and are inflected like other Urdu nouns.

236. Among these very common nouns of Persian origin there are a great many which have been derived in Persian by adding certain suffixes to underlying simpler forms. A few of these derivative suffixes have in themselves become quite common in Urdu and are often found to occur with Indic

words as well. Such suffixes are

[-daar; -daan; -staan; -baan]

It must be remembered, however, that Urdu and Persian are genetically related languages, and it is not uncommon to find in them etymologically related words which show striking phonological similarity. Sometimes the two forms are even identical.

237. -ii : added to adjectives which do not end in a [chooTii hee]; forms abstract nouns. These nouns are always feminine in Urdu. (Note the fact that this ending is identical with a similar ending mentioned earler in the section on Urdu nouns.) They are also etymologically related.)

xuub	"well, good"	xuubii	"quality; good quality"
narm	"soft"	narmii	"softness"
garm	"hot"	garmii	"heat"

238. -gii : added to adjectives which end in a [chooTii hee]; forms abstract nouns which are feminine in Urdu.

zindaa	"alive"	zindagii	"life"
bandaa	"slave"	bandagii	"slavery"
gandaa	"filthy"	gandagii	"filth"

239. -daar : added to nouns; these nouns are always in the oblique case in Urdu, even if they are of Perso-Arabic origins. This ending is considered "productive" in Urdu, i.e., it can be used with Indic words as well as with Perso-Arabic words. The resultant forms are generally considered masculine nouns in Urdu, though some forms act more as adjectives.

zamiin	"land"	zamiin-daar	"landlord"
thaanaa	"police station"	thaanee-daar	"station officer"
Theekaa	"contract"	Theekee-daar	"contractor"
kaam	"work"	kaam-daar	"ornamented"

240. -daan : added to nouns; these nouns are always in the oblique case in Urdu, even if they are of Perso-Arabic origins. This ending is considered "productive" in Urdu, and the resultant forms are considered masculine nouns.

paan	"betel leaf"	paan-daan	"a small box to keep betel leaves"
caaee	"tea"	caaee-daan	"teapot"
naaštaa	"tiffin"	naaštee-daan	"tiffin carrier"
qalam	"pen"	qalam-daan	"pen-holder"

241. -baan : added to nouns; these nouns are always in the oblique case. This ending is considered "productive" in Urdu, and the resultant forms are considered masculine nouns.

yakkaa	"Ekka, a kind of hackney carriage"	yakkee-baan	"driver of such a hackney carriage"
gaaRii	"cart"	gaaRii-baan	"cart driver"
baaG	"garden"	baaG-baan	"gardner"

242. -staan/-istaan : added to nouns; considered "productive" in Urdu. [-staan] after consonants; [-istaan] after vowels. The resultant forms are considered masculine nouns.

reeg	"sand"	reegistaan	"desert"
hinduu	"Hindu"	hindustaan	"India"
paak	"pure, clean"	paakistaan	"Pakistan"

With regard to the last two of the above mentioned suffixes, it should be pointed out that their etymologically related forms in Hindi are [-waan] and [-sthaan] respectively. The fact that these two are "productive" in Urdu may be due to this phonological similarity with the Indic forms of the same suffixes.

243. -aabaad : added to nouns; forms names of cities. These are always masculine in Urdu.

akbar	"Akbar"	akbaraabaad	"Agra"
jahããgiir	"Jehangir"	jahããgiiraabaad	"Jehangirabad"

Likewise, from [haidar alii] we get [haidaraabaad], and from [aurangzeeb] we get [aurangaabaad].

Grammar Exercises

1. Read the following sentences.

۱- وہ کتاب ہے
۲- وہ کتابیں ہیں۔
۳- یہ تصویر ہے
۴- یہ تصویریں ہیں۔
۵- وہ گھر ہے
۶- وہ گھر ہیں۔
۷- وہ جوتا ہے
۸- وہ جوتے ہیں۔
۹- یہ کیلا ہے
۱۰- یہ کیلے ہیں۔
۱۱- یہ لڑکا ہے
۱۲- یہ لڑکے ہیں۔
۱۳- وہ لڑکی ہے
۱۴- وہ لڑکیاں ہیں۔
۱۵- وہ آدمی ہے
۱۶- وہ آدمی ہیں۔
۱۷- یہ عورت ہے
۱۸- یہ عورتیں ہیں۔
۱۹- یہ بچہ ہے
۲۰- وہ احمد ہے۔
۲۱- یہ بچہ ہیں
۲۲- وہ احمد ہیں۔

2. Fill in the blanks with appropriate forms of present auxiliary.

۱- وہ کتاب ______ ۔

۲- یہ کتابیں ______ ۔

۳- وہ کیلے ______ ۔

۴- وہ کیلا ______ ۔

۵- یہ عورت ______ ۔

۶- یہ عورتیں ______ ۔

۷- وہ لڑکیاں ______ ۔

۸- وہ لڑکے ______ ۔

۹- یہ لڑکا ______ ۔

۱۰- وہ جوتے ______ ۔

3. **Read the following sentences.**

۱- وہ کیا ہے ؟

۲- وہ کیا ہیں ؟

۳- وہ کون ہے ؟

۴- وہ کون ہیں ؟

۵- وہ کیا چیز ہے ؟

۶- وہ کون صاحب ہیں ؟

۷- وہ احمد صاحب ہیں ۔

۸- وہ کون صاحبہ ہیں ؟

۹- وہ نجمہ صاحبہ ہیں ۔

۱۰- یہ کیا چیز ہے ؟

۱۱- یہ ایک کتاب ہے ۔

۱۲- وہ کیا چیزیں ہیں ؟

۱۳۔ وہ دو تصویریں ہیں۔   ۱۴۔ یہ دو کیلے ہیں۔

۱۵۔ وہ دو گھر ہیں۔   ۱۶۔ وہ ایک سیب ہے۔

4. Fill in the blanks.

۱۔ یہ ایک گھر ـــــ ۔

۲۔ یہ احمد صاحب ـــــ ۔

۳۔ وہ احمد ـــــ ۔

۴۔ وہ تین سیب ـــــ ۔

۵۔ وہ بچہ ـــــ ۔

۶۔ وہ کون صاحب ـــــ ۔

۷۔ یہ کیا چیز ـــــ ۔

۸۔ یہ دو عورتیں ـــــ ۔

۹۔ وہ کیا چیزیں ـــــ ۔

۱۰۔ یہ چار گھر ـــــ ۔

5. Give the appropriate question to each of the following statements. Example:

Question.	Statement.
وہ کون صاحب ہیں؟	وہ احمد صاحب ہیں۔

یہ کتاب ہے ۔ یہ کیا ہے ؟

۱- وہ نجمہ صاحبہ ہیں ۔

۲- یہ ایک کیلا ہے ۔

۳- یہ تصویریں ہیں ۔

۴- یہ احمد ہے ۔

۵- وہ پانچ سیب ہیں ۔

۶- یہ چار کتابیں ہیں ۔

۷- وہ شکیل صاحب ہیں ۔

۸- یہ جوتے ہیں ۔

۹- وہ نجمہ ہے ۔

۱۰- یہ چار کیلے ہیں ۔

6. Read the following.

۱- وہ کیا ہے ؟ کیلا ہے ۔ کیسا ہے ؟ اچھّا ہے ۔

۲- یہ کیا ہے ؟ کتاب ہے ۔ کیسی ہے ؟ اچھّی ہے ۔

۳- یہ جوتے ہیں ۔ کیسے ہیں ؟ اچھّے ہیں ۔

۴- وہ تصویریں ہیں ۔ کیسی ہیں ؟ اچھّی ہیں ۔

۵- وہ جوتے کیسے ہیں ؟ اچھّے ہیں ۔

۶- وہ تصویریں کیسی ہیں ؟ اچھّی ہیں ۔

۷- وہ جوتے اچھّے ہیں ۔

۸- یہ تصویر اچھّی ہے ۔

۹- یہ سیب کیسا ہے ؟

۱۰ - وہ گھر کیسے ہیں ؟

۱۱ - احمد صاحب کیسے ہیں ؟ اچھے ہیں

۱۲ - نجمہ کیسی ہے ؟ اچھی ہے -

۱۳ - نجمہ صاحبہ کیسی ہیں ؟ اچھی ہیں -

۱۴ - یہ کیلا کیسا ہے ؟ میٹھا ہے -

۱۵ - وہ جوتے کیسے ہیں ؟ کالے ہیں -

۱۶ - یہ کتاب کیسی ہے ؟ اچھی ہے -

۱۷ - وہ سیب کیسے ہیں ؟ میٹھے ہیں -

۱۸ - یہ کالی کتاب کیسی ہے ؟ اچھی ہے -

۱۹ - یہ ہرے کیلے کیسے ہیں ؟ میٹھے ہیں -

۲۰ - وہ نیا گھر کیسا ہے ؟ اچھا ہے

۲۱ - وہ ہرا کیلا میٹھا ہے -

۲۲ - وہ نئی کتاب اچھی ہے -

۲۳ - وہ لال سیب میٹھے ہیں -

۲۴ - احمد صاحب اچھے ہیں -

۲۵ - نجمہ اچھی ہے -

7. Fill in the blanks.

۱- کیلا کیسا ــــــ ؟

۲- لال کیلا ــــــ ہے۔

۳- یہ نئے گھر ــــــ ہیں؟

۴- وہ سیب کیسا ــــــ ؟

۵- نجمہ صاحبہ کیسی ــــــ ؟

۶- احمد ــــــ ہے؟

۷- وہ تصویر کیسی ــــــ ؟

۸- یہ نیا جوتا ــــــ ــــــ ؟

۹- وہ ہرے کیلے ــــــ ــــــ ؟

۱۰- یہ ــــــ گھر کیسا ــــــ ؟

۱۱- وہ صاحب ــــــ ہیں؟

۱۲- یہ سیب ــــــ ہیں۔

۱۳- وہ کتاب ــــــ ــــــ ۔

۱۴- یہ تصویریں ــــــ ــــــ ۔

۱۵- احمد صاحب ــــــ ــــــ ۔

8. Read the following sentences.

۱- میں طالب علم ہوں۔

۲- وہ بھی طالب علم ہے ۔

۳- آپ بھی طالب علم ہیں ۔

۴- کیا آپ بھی طالب علم ہیں ؟

۵- کیا وہ لڑکا طالب علم ہے ؟

۶- کیا وہ لڑکی طالب علم ہے ؟

۷- وہ صاحب دکاندار ہیں ۔

۸- یہ صاحب بھی دکاندار ہیں ۔

۹- احمد صاحب ڈاکٹر ہیں ۔

۱۰- وہ لوگ کسان ہیں ۔

۱۱- ہم سب پاکستانی ہیں ۔

۱۲- تم کیا ہو ؟ کیا ڈاکٹر ہو ؟ جی ہاں، ڈاکٹر ہوں ۔

۱۳- آپ کون ہیں ؟ کیا احمد صاحب ہیں ؟ جی نہیں، شکیل ہوں ۔

۱۴- وہ کون ہیں ؟ نجمہ صاحبہ ہیں ۔

۱۵- وہ کیسا طالب علم ہے ؟ اچّھا طالب علم ہے ۔

9. Fill in the blanks.

۱- میں ڈاکٹر ____ ۔

۲- آپ طالب علم ____ ۔

۳- احمد صاحب پاکستانی ____ ۔

۴- میں بھی پاکستانی ____ ۔

۵- کیا وہ صاحب امریکن ____ ؟

۶- وہ کیسا ____ ہے ؟

۷- تم کیا ____ ؟

۸- جی ہاں، میں ____ ____ ۔

۹- احمد اچھا ____ ____ ۔

۱۰- نجمہ اچھی ____ ____ ۔

۱۱- آپ کون ____ ؟

۱۲- وہ کیا ____ ؟

۱۳- وہ صاحبہ کیا ____ ؟

۱۴- وہ کیسے ڈاکٹر ____ ؟

۱۵- احمد کیسا طالب علم ____ ؟

۱۶- نجمہ صاحبہ، آپ کیسی ____ ؟

۱۷- احمد، تم ____ ____ ؟

۱۸- کیا تم دکاندار ____ ؟ جی نہیں، میں طالب علم ____ ۔

۱۹- نجمہ ____ طالب علم ہے ؟ وہ اچھی طالب علم ____ ۔

۲۰- وہ لڑکا کون ____ ؟ احمد ____ ۔

10. **Rewrite the following sentences after changing them into negative. Examples :**

یہ کتاب ہے ← یہ کتاب نہیں ۔

میں ڈاکٹر ہوں ← میں ڈاکٹر نہیں ۔

۱ - وہ ڈاکٹر صاحب ہیں ۔

۲ - نجمہ اچھی لڑکی ہے ۔

۳ - تم اچھے طالب علم ہو ۔

۴ - وہ طالب علم اچھا ہے ۔

۵ - احمد صاحب امریکن ہیں ۔

۶ - نجمہ صاحبہ پاکستانی ہیں ۔

۷ - وہ نئے گھر ہیں ۔

۸ - یہ نیا اسکول خراب ہے ۔

۹ - وہ اچھی طالب علم ہے ۔

۱۰ - کیا یہ کتاب اچھی ہے ؟

۱۱ - کیا یہ سیب میٹھے ہیں ؟

۱۲ - یہ نئے پھل میٹھے ہیں ۔

۱۳ - کیا یہ سیب ہے ؟

۱۴ - وہ لڑکی بچہ ہے -

۱۵ - احمد پاکستانی طالب علم ہے -

11. Read the following sentences.

۱ - وہ جوتے کی دکان ہے -

۲ - یہ احمد کی کتاب ہے -

۳ - وہ بچہ کا سیب ہے -

۴ - یہ احمد صاحب کی دکان ہے -

۵ - یہ ڈاکٹر صاحب کا گھر ہے -

۶ - وہ پھل کی دکانیں ہیں -

۷ - یہ کتابوں کی دکان ہے -

۸ - یہ لڑکوں کا اسکول ہے -

۹ - لڑکیوں کا اسکول کیسا ہے ؟

۱۰ - یہ اسکول کی کتابیں ہیں -

۱۱ - احمد کی نئی کتاب اچھّی ہے -

۱۲ - بچہ کا نیا اسکول خراب ہے -

۱۳ - وہ لال گھر احمد کا ہے -

۱۴ - یہ نئے جوتے بچہ کے ہیں -

۱۵- کیا یہ لال کتاب احمد کی ہے؟

12. Fill in the blanks.

۱- وہ کتابوں ___ دکان ہے۔

۲- یہ احمد صاحب ___ گھر ہے۔

۳- بچہ ___ اسکول اچھّا ہے۔

۴- یہ احمد ___ جوتے ہیں۔

۵- کیا وہ پھل ___ دکانیں ہیں؟

۶- یہ گھر ڈاکٹر صاحب ___ ہے۔

۷- یہ احمد ___ دکانیں ہیں۔

۸- احمد ___ کتاب اچھّی ___۔

۹- یہ لال گھر بچہ ___ ___۔

۱۰- کیا یہ لڑکوں ___ اسکول ___۔

۱۱- احمد کی ___ کیسی ہے؟

۱۲- بچہ کے ___ لال ہیں۔

۱۳- احمد کا ___ اسکول اچھّا ہے۔

۱۴- یہ اسکول کی ___ ہیں۔

۱۵- بچہ کا نیا ___ کیسا ہے؟

13. Read the following.

۱- وہ کون ہے؟ وہ احمد کا بھائی ہے۔
۲- وہ احمد کا چھوٹا بھائی ہے۔
۳- احمد نجمہ کا بڑا بھائی ہے۔
۴- نجمہ احمد کی چھوٹی بہن ہے۔
۵- حامد صاحب احمد کے بڑے بھائی ہیں۔
۶- احمد حامد صاحب کا چھوٹا بھائی ہے۔
۷- وہ صاحب کون ہیں؟ وہ احمد کے والد، محمود صاحب ہیں۔
۸- محمود صاحب ڈاکٹر ہیں۔
۹- احمد کی والدہ بھی ڈاکٹر ہیں۔
۱۰- احمد کے والد اور والدہ ڈاکٹر ہیں۔

14. Read the following.

۱- یہ احمد کے والد کا گھر ہے۔
۲- وہ نجمہ کے بھائی کا گھر ہیں۔
۳- وہ احمد کی والدہ کی کتاب ہے۔
۴- یہ احمد کے بھائی کا نیا گھر ہے۔
۵- وہ احمد کے والدین کا گھر ہے۔

۶- احمد کے بھائی کا گھر کیسا ہے ؟
۷- نجمہ کے بڑے بھائی کیا ہیں ؟
۸- نجمہ کے چھوٹے بھائی کا گھر اچھا ہے ۔
۹- یہ احمد کی والدہ کی کتابیں ہیں ۔
۱۰- یہ نجمہ کے والد کے جوتے ہیں ۔
۱۱- وہ نجمہ کے اسکول کی کتابیں ہیں ۔
۱۲- یہ لڑکوں کے اسکول کی کتابیں ہیں ۔
۱۳- یہ لڑکیوں کے اسکول کی بس ہے ۔
۱۴- یہ احمد کے بڑے بھائی کی کتابیں ہیں ۔

15. Fill in the blanks.

۱- یہ احمد ــــــ بھائی کا گھر ہے ۔
۲- وہ نجمہ ــــــ والد ــــــ جوتے ہیں ۔
۳- کیا حامد صاحب نجمہ ــــــ بڑے بھائی ــــــ ؟
۴- یہ احمد ــــــ اسکول ــــــ کتابیں ہیں ۔
۵- وہ لڑکیوں ــــــ اسکول ــــــ بس ہے ۔
۶- کیا نجمہ احمد ــــــ بڑی بہن ہے ۔
۷- یہ احمد ــــــ چھوٹی بہن ــــــ کتاب ہے ۔

۸- وہ احمد ـــــ والد کا گھر ہیں ۔

۹- یہ دو گھر احمد ـــــ ہیں ۔

۱۰- یہ لال کتاب نجمہ ـــــ بھائی کی ـــــ ۔

16. Read the following.

۱- احمد میرا چھوٹا بھائی ہے ۔

۲- میرا نام حامد ہے ۔

۳- میرے بڑے بھائی ڈاکٹر ہیں ۔

۴- اس کا نام محمود ہے ۔

۵- اس کی چھوٹی بہن کا نام نجمہ ہے ۔

۶- ان کے والد ڈاکٹر ہیں ۔

۷- کیا یہ آپ کی کتابیں ہیں ؟

۸- یہ ہمارے اسکول کی بس ہیں ۔

۹- یہ اس کے والد کی دکان ہے ۔

۱۰- انکی والدہ میری والدہ کی بہن ہیں ۔

۱۱- کیا وہ تمہارا چھوٹا بھائی ہے ؟

۱۲- تمہارے والد میرے دوست ہیں ۔

۱۳- حامد صاحب تمہارے بڑے بھائی کے دوست ہیں۔

۱۴- کیا وہ تمہارے بڑے بھائی ہیں؟

۱۵- یہ ہمارا گھر ہے، اس کا گھر نہیں۔

۱۶- آپ کے والد کا نام کیا ہے؟

۱۷- کیا وہ آپ کے دوست ہیں؟

۱۸- آپکی والدہ میری والدہ کی دوست ہیں۔

۱۹- وہ ہمارے اسکول کے طالب علم ہیں۔

۲۰- ان صاحب کا نام کیا ہے؟

۲۱- یہ اس لڑکے کی کتابیں ہیں۔

۲۲- وہ ان لڑکیوں کا اسکول ہے۔

۲۳- یہ اس لڑکے کے والد کی دکان ہے۔

۲۴- اس لڑکی کا نام کیا ہے؟

۲۵- اس کا نام نجمہ ہے، وہ احمد کی چھوٹی بہن ہے۔

17. Rewrite the phrases given below after replacing the plus sign with appropriate form of / -kaa / and making other changes if necessary. Examples:

احمد کا بھائی + گھر

Rewrite. احمد کے بھائی کا گھر

میرا چھوٹا بھائی + کتابیں

Rewrite. میرے چھوٹے بھائی کی کتابیں۔

۱- بچہ کا بھائی + اسکول

۲- ہماری بہن + کتاب

۳- ہمارے بڑے بھائی + گھر

۴- آپ کے والد + نام

۵- وہ چھوٹا لڑکا + کتاب

۶- آپ کا دوست + دکان

۷- احمد کی چھوٹی بہن + نام

۸- وہ صاحب + دکانیں

۹- تمہارا چھوٹا بھائی + اسکول

۱۰- بچہ کا اسکول + کتابیں

۱۱- ان کا بڑا بھائی + دکانیں

۱۲- احمد کی والدہ + کتاب

۱۳- احمد کا دوست + جوتے

۱۴- احمد کا دوست + بڑا بھائی

۱۵- نجمہ کی دوست + بڑی بہن

۱۶- وہ نیا اسکول + لڑکے

۱۷- یہ نئی دکان + کتابیں

۱۸- احمد کا بھائی + جوتے

۱۹- ہمارا دوست + میٹھے سیب

۲۰- تمہاری بہن + نئی کتابیں

18. Write complete sentences in answer to the following questions.

۱- آپ کا کیا نام ہے ؟

۲- کیا یہ اس کے والد کی دکان ہے ؟

۳- تمہارے بھائی کیا ہیں ؟

۴- اس لڑکی کا کیا نام ہے ؟

۵- آپ کے والد کا کیا نام ہے ؟

۶- کیا وہ نیا گھر ان کے بھائی کا ہے ؟

۷- کیا وہ تمہاری کتابیں ہیں ؟

۸ - کیا آپ میرے بھائی کے دوست ہیں ؟

۹ - کیا وہ میرے اسکول کی بس ہے ؟

۱۰ - اس لڑکے کا کیا نام ہے ؟

۱۱ - نجمہ احمد کی کیا ہے ؟

۱۲ - حامد صاحب نجمہ کے کیا ہیں ؟

۱۳ - تمہارے والد کیا ہیں ؟

۱۴ - کیا یہ ہمارے جوتے ہیں ؟

۱۵ - ان کے دوست کا نام کیا ہے ؟

19. Read the following.

۱ - آپ کا گھر کہاں ہے ؟

۲ - میرا گھر وہاں ہے ، بائیں طرف

۳ - کیا یہاں کتابوں کی دکان ہے ؟

۴ - جی ہاں ، ادھر ہے ، دائیں طرف

۵ - پھل کی دکان بائیں طرف ہے ۔

۶ - یہاں جوتوں کی دکانیں ہیں ۔

۷ - ڈاکٹر صاحب کا گھر کہاں ہے ؟

۸- ہمارا اسکول ادھر اس سڑک پر ہے ۔

۹- کیا آپ کی دکان اس سڑک پر ہے ؟

۱۰- اس بازار میں پھل کی دکانیں ہیں ۔

۱۱- آپ کے بھائی کہاں ہیں ؟

۱۲- وہ امریکا میں ہیں ۔

۱۳- میرے والد لاہور میں ہیں ۔

۱۴- میری بہنیں اسکول میں ہیں ۔

۱۵- احمد وہاں ہے ، کتابوں کی دکان میں ۔

۱۶- تمہارے والدین کہاں ہیں ؟

۱۷- میری والدہ کراچی میں ہیں ۔

۱۸- پھل کی دکانیں کس طرف ہیں ؟

۱۹- پھل کی دکانیں اس طرف ، ادھر ہیں ، بائیں طرف

۲۰- یہاں شہر میں دو بڑے اسکول ہیں ۔

۲۱- میرا گھر انارکلی میں ہے ۔

۲۲- آپ کے بھائی امریکا میں کہاں ہیں ؟

۲۳- وہ شکاگو میں ہیں ۔

۲۴- کتابوں کی دکان کس طرف ہے ، کیا دائیں طرف ؟

۲۵- ان کی دکان سڑک پر کس طرف ہے ؟ دائیں طرف یا بائیں طرف ؟

۲۶- آپ کا گھر شہر میں کہاں ہے ؟

۲۷- کیا آپ کے والد گھر میں ہیں ؟

۲۸- اس دکان پر پھل اچھے ہیں ۔

۲۹- تمہارے دوست اس دکان میں ہیں ۔

۳۰- جی نہیں ، میرا چھوٹا بھائی گھر میں ہیں ۔

20. Give your own answers to questions in the above exercise.

21. Read the following.

۱- میرے پاس تین کتابیں ہیں ۔

۲- کیا اس کے پاس جوتے ہیں ؟

۳- ہمارے پاس آج کل نوکر نہیں ۔

۴- کیا تمہارے پاس کچھ کھانا ہے ؟

۵- آج مجھے وقت نہیں ۔

۶- کیا تم کو فرصت ہے ؟

۷- نہیں، مجھے آج تو فرصت نہیں -

۸- اسکو آج بخار ہے-

۹- انہیں کل فرصت ہے -

۱۰- انکے دو بیٹے ہیں -

۱۱- میرے دو دوست ہیں-

۱۲- کیا آپ کے کوئی بھائی ہیں ؟

۱۳- میری دو بہنیں ہیں-

۱۴- ان کے پاس چھ کتابیں ہیں -

۱۵- میرے والد کے پاس ایک بڑا گھر ہے-

۱۶- نجمہ کے بھائی کے پاس جوتے نہیں -

۱۷- نجمہ کے ایک بھی بچہ نہیں-

۱۸- احمد کو آج بخار ہے -

۱۹- کیا تمہیں آج فرصت ہے ؟

۲۰- اس کا ایک بھی دوست نہیں -

۲۱- ان لڑکوں کے پاس کتابیں نہیں-

۲۲- اس دکاندار کے پاس اچھے پھل ہیں -

۲۳- ان لڑکیوں کو آج چھٹی ہے -

۲۴- ان کے بھائی کے پاس کوئی نوکر نہیں-

۲۵ - مجھے آج بخار ہے -

22. Give complete sentences in answer to the following questions. Examples:

ا - اس کے پاس کیا ہے ؟

اس کے پاس ایک کتاب ہے -

ب - کیا ان کو فرصت ہے ؟

نہیں ، انکو فرصت نہیں -

۱ - لڑکے کے پاس کیا ہیں ؟

۲ - کیا اس کے پاس اچھے پھل ہیں ؟

۳ - کیا تم کو بخار ہے ؟

۴ - ان کے کتنے بیٹے ہیں ؟

۵ - کیا صاحب کو کل فرصت ہے ؟

۶ - انہیں کیا بخار ہے ؟

۷ - ان لڑکوں کے پاس کیا نہیں ؟

۸ - آپ کے بھائی کو کیا نہیں ؟

۹- کیا ان لڑکیوں کو چھٹّی ہے ؟

۱۰- کیا مجھے بخار ہے ؟

۱۱- آپ کی کتنی بہنیں ہیں ؟

۱۲- کیا آپ کو کل کچھ فرصت ہے ؟

۱۳- اس دکاندار کے پاس کیا ہیں ؟

۱۴- کیا ہم کو آج چھٹّی ہے ؟

۱۵- نجمہ کے کتنے بچّے ہیں ؟

23. Read the following.

۱- میرے والد لاہور میں تھے ۔

۲- وہ دکان سڑک پر تھا ۔

۳- آپ کے بھائی امریکہ میں کہاں تھے ؟

۴- نجمہ گھر میں تھی ۔

۵- ان کے پاس ایک کتاب تھی ۔

۶- تمہارا دوست اس دکان میں تھا ۔

۷- ان کی والدہ کراچی میں تھیں ۔

۸- کتابوں کی دکان کس طرف تھی ؟

۹- ان کی تین بہنیں تھیں ۔

۱۰- میرا چھوٹا بھائی گھر میں نہیں تھا۔

۱۱- اس کے پاس نئے جوتے نہ تھے۔

۱۲- نجمہ احمد کی چھوٹی بہن تھی۔

۱۳- ہمارا اسکول اس سڑک پر تھا۔

۱۴- کیا وہ لوگ پاکستانی کسان تھے؟

۱۵- مجھے کل چھٹّی نہیں تھی۔

۱۶- ان کو آج بخار نہیں تھا۔

۱۷- میں کل گھر میں نہیں تھی۔

۱۸- ہم کل گھر میں تھے۔

۱۹- تمہارے والدین پاکستان میں کہاں تھے؟

۲۰- احمد کے اسکول کی لڑکیاں اس دکان میں تھیں۔

24. Replace the Present Auxiliary forms in the sentences of exercise no. 19 with appropriate Past Auxiliary forms.

25. Read the following.

۱- میں روز وہاں جاتا ہوں۔

۲- میرے والد یہاں رہتے ہیں۔

۳- وہ اسی اسکول میں پڑھتا ہے -

۴- کیا آپ کے بھائی اس گھر میں رہتے ہیں ؟

۵- کیا یہ لڑکیاں اس اسکول میں پڑھتی ہیں ؟

۶- وہ روز میرے پاس آتا ہے -

۷- ہم آج کل اچّھا کھانا کھاتے ہیں -

۸. احمد ہر سال امریکہ جاتا ہے -

۹- اسکول کی بس اس سڑک پر جاتی ہے -

۱۰- وہ اس اسکول میں پڑھتی ہے -

۱۱- میں ان کے گھر روز جاتا ہوں -

۱۲- وہ روز ہمارے اسکول آتا ہے -

۱۳- کیا آپ اس کے گھر جاتے ہیں ؟

۱۴- میں اس دکان میں کھانا کھاتا ہوں -

۱۵- ڈاکٹر صاحب روز میرے والد کے پاس آتے ہیں -

۱۶- لڑکیاں بس سے اسکول کو جاتی ہیں -

۱۷- یہ سڑک میرے گھر کو جاتی ہے -

۱۸- یہ طالب علم نئی کتابیں پڑھتے ہیں -

۱۹- وہ امریکا میں کہاں رہتے ہیں -

۲۰- وہ میرے گھر کے پاس رہتا ہے -

26. Replace the Present Auxiliary forms in the sentences of exercise no. 23 with the appropriate Past Auxiliary forms.

27. Read the following.

۱۔ وہ لڑکیاں اس اسکول میں نہیں پڑھتیں ۔

۲۔ ہم آج کل وہاں نہیں جاتے ۔

۳۔ احمد اس اسکول میں نہیں پڑھتا ۔

۴۔ وہ لوگ ہمارے گھر کے پاس نہیں رہتے تھے ۔

۵۔ کیا آپ ان کے گھر روز نہیں جاتے ؟

۶۔ وہ اس دکان کا کھانا نہیں کھاتی ہیں ۔

۷۔ ان کی بہن بس سے اسکول نہیں جاتی ۔

۸۔ ان کی والدہ اس گھر میں نہیں رہتیں ۔

۹۔ کیا یہ لڑکیاں اس گھر میں نہیں رہتی تھیں ؟

۱۰۔ وہ لڑکا بس سے اسکول نہیں جاتا تھا ۔

28. Read the following.

۱۔ مجھے اپنا پتہ بتائیے ۔

۲۔ اسکو ایک میٹھا سیب دیجئے ۔

۳ - لڑکی کو ایک کتاب دو ۔

۴ - احمد سے اس کا پتہ پوچھئے ۔

۵ - اس دکان سے کچھ کاغذ لیجئے ۔

۶ - یہ سیب تم کھاؤ ، وہ دوسرا سیب احمد کو دے دو ۔

۷ - فوراً ڈاکٹر صاحب کے پاس جائیے ۔

۸ - تم آج کھانا میرے ساتھ کھاؤ ۔

۹ - مجھے اس لڑکے کا نام بتاؤ ۔

۱۰ - کل پھر اسی وقت آئیے ۔

۱۱ - لو یہ کتابیں لو ، اور فوراً گھر کو جاؤ ۔

۱۲ - ان سے پوچھو ، ان کا کیا نام ہے ۔

29. Read the following.

۱ - اس لڑکے کے ساتھ مت جاؤ ۔

۲ - میرے والد کے پاس آج نہ جائیے ۔

۳ - ان کو یہ بات نہ بتائیے ۔

۴ - ایسی باتیں مت سوچو ۔

۵ - مجھ سے اتنے سوال مت پوچھو ۔

۶ - اس وقت ان کے ساتھ نہ جائیے ۔

۷- ابھی تم گھر پر رہو اور اسکول مت جاؤ ۔

۸- روز مجھ سے سوال مت پوچھو، بلکہ میرے سوال کا جواب دو ۔

۹- آپ ایسی خراب کتاب نہ پڑھئے ۔

۱۰- کل آپ اس وقت نہ آئیے ۔

30. Complete the following sentences by supplying the correct Imperative form of some suitable verb.

۱- آپ فوراً اس کے پاس ___ ۔

۲- احمد سے اس کا پتہ ___ ۔

۳- کل اس وقت مت ___ ۔

۴- آج آپ کھانا میرے ساتھ ___ ۔

۵- اس دکان سے پھل مت ___ ۔

۶- اس وقت یہ کتاب نہ ___ ۔

۷- اپنے والد سے اس سوال کا جواب ___ ۔

۸- اس سے ___ اس کا کیا پتہ ہے ۔

۹- ڈاکٹر صاحب کو ___ کہ آپ آج کیسے ہیں ۔

۱۰- یہ سیب اچھا نہیں، اسے مت ___ ۔

31. Read the following.

۱- وہ آج میرے ساتھ بازار جائے گا۔

۲- میں بھی اس اسکول میں پڑھوں گی۔

۳- ہم لوگ آج کھانا باہر کھائیں گے۔

۴- وہ لوگ اس مکان میں نہیں رہیں گے۔

۵- کیا تم ایک بات بتاؤ گے؟

۶- ہم بھی کچھ پھل لیں گے۔

۷- اس جگہ آپ کتنے دن رہیں گے۔

۸- میں روز ڈاکٹر کے پاس نہیں جاؤنگا۔

۹- کل نجمہ کے اسکول کی لڑکیاں کراچی جائیں گی۔

۱۰- یہ بس ابھی نہیں جائے گی۔

۱۱- میں کل احمد سے اسکے مکان کا پتہ پوچھوں گا۔

۱۲- تم آج اسکول نہیں جاؤ گے۔

۱۳- کیوں نجمہ، ایک سیب لو گی؟

۱۴- آپ یہاں سے پاکستان کیسے جائینگے؟

۱۵- تم روز یہاں آتے ہو، کل کیوں نہیں آؤ گے؟

32. Complete the following sentences by supplying the correct Simple Future form of the Verb given in parenthesis.

۱- کیا یہ لڑکی بھی بازار (جانا)
۲ - کراچی کی بس کس وقت (آنا)
۳- ان کو یہ باتیں کون [بنانا]
۴- آپ اس دکان سے کیا [لینا]
۵- کیا تم آج ان کے پاس نہیں [جانا]
۶- جب وہ [آنا] تو میں ان سے [پوچھنا]
۷- آپ کے جانے کے بعد اس مکان میں کون [رہنا]
۸- ہم لوگ آج کھانا گھر میں نہیں [کھانا]
۹- میں کل شام کو آپ کے پاس [آنا]
۱۰- ان لڑکوں کو کھانا کون [دینا]

33. Read the following.

۱- میں کل ان کے پاس گیا۔
۲- وہ لڑکی اپنے والد کے ساتھ گئی۔
۳- احمد نے اپنے بھائی سے ایک سوال پوچھا۔
۴- آپ وہاں کتنے دن رہے؟

۵ - ہم نے چار کتابیں لیں ۔

۶ - نجمہ نے ایک جوتا لیا ۔

۷ - ان لوگوں نے ہم سے ایک سوال پوچھا ۔

۸ - آپ یہاں کب آئے ۔

۹ - ہم کل شام کو یہاں آئے ۔

۱۰ - میں نے سڑک کے پاس ایک دکان دیکھی ۔

۱۱ - اس نے راستے میں ایک لڑکی دیکھی ۔

۱۲ - احمد نے نجمہ کو دکان کے پاس دیکھا ۔

۱۳ - نجمہ نے احمد کو کہاں دیکھا ؟

۱۴ - انہوں نے مجھے اپنا پتہ بتایا ۔

۱۵ - میں نے اس سے پوچھا تو اس نے اپنا نام نہیں بتایا ۔

۱۶ - وہ آج اسکول نہیں گئی ۔

۱۷ - وہ لوگ میرے پاس دو دن رہے ۔

۱۸ - اس نے میرے سوال کا جواب نہیں دیا ۔

۱۹ - میں نے اس کو نہیں دیکھا ۔

۲۰ - نجمہ کی بہنوں نے کل ہمارے ساتھ کھانا کھایا ۔

۲۱ - ہم نے اس دکان سے کچھ پھل لئے ۔

۲۲ - اس اسکول کے لڑکے آج کراچی گئے ۔

۲۳ - انہوں نے ان لڑکوں کو کچھ پھل دئے ۔

۲۴ - آپ کو یہ کتاب کس نے دی ؟

۲۵ - بچہ نے نئے جوتے کہاں سے لئے ۔

34. Complete the following sentences by supplying the correct SimplePast form ofthe Verb given in parenthesis.

۱ - ہم نے ان سے ایک سوال [پوچھنا]

۲ - کیا وہ اسکول نہیں [جانا]

۳ - میں نے بچہ کو دکان کے پاس [دیکھنا]

۴ - آپ کو یہ کتابیں کس نے [دینا]

۵ - ہم اس شہر میں سات دن [رہنا]

۶ - آپ نے آج کھانا کہاں [کھانا]

۷ - انہوں نے مجھے دو کتابیں (دینا]

۸ - ہم نے اس دکان سے کچھ سیب [لینا]

۹ - تم یہاں کب [آنا] ؟

۱۰ - اس لڑکی نے کچھ کتابیں [لینا]

۱۱ - انہوں نے مجھے اپنا پتہ نہیں [بتانا]

۱۲ - انکی بہنیں آج کہاں [جانا] ؟

۱۳۔ ڈاکٹر صاحب آج میرے والد کے پاس نہیں (آنا) ۔
۱۴۔ کیا آپ نے انکی دکان (دیکھنا) ؟
۱۵۔ وہ لڑکی اپنے والد کے پاس تین دن (رہنا) ۔
۱۶۔ انھوں نے مجھ سے کچھ سوال (پوچھنا) ۔
۱۷۔ احمد صاحب یہاں کس وقت (آنا) ؟
۱۸۔ تم کو یہ بات کس نے (بتانا) ؟
۱۹۔ وہ آج اسکول بس سے نہیں (جانا) ۔
۲۰۔ ان لڑکیوں نے کچھ پھل (کھانا) ۔

35. Read the following.

۱۔ میں احمد صاحب سے ملا ہوں ۔
۲۔ وہ یہاں چار دن رہا تھا ۔
۳۔ نجمہ ابھی یہاں آئی تھی ۔
۴۔ احمد تو بازار گیا ہے ۔
۵۔ میں انکے پاس کل گئی تھی ۔
۶۔ نجمہ کی بڑی بہن کل یہاں آئی تھیں ۔
۷۔ ڈاکٹر صاحب وہاں کب تک رہے تھے ؟
۸۔ کیا آپ احمد سے ملے تھے ؟

۹۔ وہ لڑکیاں اسکول گئی ہیں ۔

۱۰۔ میں نے اس دکان سے جوتے لئے تھے ۔

۱۱۔ تم نے وہ کتاب کس کو دی تھی ؟

۱۲۔ کیا آپ نے یہ کتاب پڑھی ہے ؟

۱۳۔ میں آپ سے کراچی میں ملی تھی ۔

۱۴۔ انھوں نے یہ کتابیں کہاں سے لی تھیں ؟

۱۵۔ اس نے تم سے ایک بات پوچھی ہے ۔

36. Read the following sentences after

1) adding the proper form of the present auxiliary,

2) adding the proper form of the past auxiliary.

Note the changes in meaning.

۱۔ ہم شکیل صاحب سے ملے ۔

۲۔ میں نے یہ کتاب پڑھی ۔

۳۔ انھوں نے یہ سوال پوچھا ۔

۴۔ نجمہ چار بجے یہاں آئی ۔

۵۔ احمد بازار گیا ۔

۶۔ آپ کے والد نے کچھ پھل لئے ۔

۷- انکی والدہ یہاں دو دن رہیں ۔
۸- آپ نے یہ کتابیں کہاں سے لیں ؟
۹- وہ یہاں کس وقت آیا ؟
۱۰- انکی بہنیں آج کہاں گئیں ؟

37. Read the following.

۱- وہ روز بہت کام کرتا ہے ۔
۲- ہم اس اسکول میں کام کرتے تھے ۔
۳- آپ کس کے ساتھ کام کرتی تھیں ؟
۴- آپ کے بعد یہاں کون کام کریگا ؟
۵- مجھ کے ساتھ احمد بھی کام کریں گے ۔
۶- میں نے آج بہت کام کیا ۔
۷- انھوں نے میرے لئے بہت کام کیا ۔
۸- آپ نے وہاں کس کے ساتھ کام کیا تھا ؟
۹- کیا آپ نے پہلے بھی یہ کام کیا ہے ؟
۱۰- احمد نے مجھ سے تھوڑی دیر بات کی ۔
۱۱- اس سے کون بات کریگا ؟
۱۲- انھوں نے کام چار بجے شروع کیا ۔

۱۳۔ کھانا دس بجے شروع کریں گے ۔

۱۴۔ آپ یہ کتاب پسند کریں گے ۔

۱۵۔ انھوں نے یہ کتاب بہت پسند کی ۔

۱۶۔ میں آپ کا مکان پسند کرتا ہوں ۔

۱۷۔ وہ روز نو بجے کام شروع کرتا تھا ۔

۱۸۔ آپ ان سے کب ملاقات کریں گے ؟

۱۹۔ ہم نے ان سے کل ملاقات کی تھی ۔

۲۰۔ نجمہ سیب بہت پسند کرتی ہے ۔

۲۱۔ نجمہ کام کرنا نہیں پسند کرتی ۔

۲۲۔ انھوں نے وہاں جانا پسند نہ کیا ۔

۲۳۔ ہم نے کام وقت پر شروع نہ کیا ۔

۲۴۔ میں تمھارے ساتھ کام کرنا پسند کرتا ہوں ۔

۲۵۔ انھوں نے یہ کام کل سے شروع کیا ہے ۔

38. In the following sentences change present and past imperfect forms to present and past perfect forms respectively, making changes in the subject whenever necessary. Example:

ا۔ وہ یہاں کام کرتا ہے ۔ ←

ب۔ اس نے یہاں کام کیا ہے ۔

۱- احمد میرے ساتھ رہتا تھا۔
۲- نجمہ یہاں کام کرتی تھی۔
۳- شکیل صاحب یہ مکان پسند کرتے تھے۔
۴- کیا آپ ان سے ملتے تھے؟
۵- میں اس دکان سے کتابیں لیتا تھا۔
۶- میں آپ کی کتاب پسند کرتا ہوں۔
۷- وہ نو بجے کام شروع کرتا تھا۔
۸- میں اس دکان میں کھانا کھاتا ہوں۔
۹- میں اس وقت ان سے بات کرتا تھا۔
۱۰- لڑکیاں بس سے اسکول جاتی ہیں۔
۱۱- ہم اپنے والد کے ساتھ کراچی جاتے ہیں۔
۱۲- کیا نجمہ آپ سے لاہور میں ملتی تھی؟
۱۳- وہ مجھ سے کچھ سوال پوچھتے تھے۔
۱۴- وہ یہاں رہنا پسند کرتا تھا۔
۱۵- میں اپنے بڑے بھائی کے ساتھ یہاں آتی ہوں۔
۱۶- وہ لوگ اس دکان میں کھانا کھاتے ہیں۔
۱۷- وہ لڑکیاں اس اسکول میں پڑھنا پسند کرتی تھیں۔
۱۸- ڈاکٹر صاحب چار بجے تک یہاں رہتے تھے۔

۱۹ - آپ امریکا میں کس کے ساتھ کام کرتے تھے؟

۲۰ - بچہ کس سے سوال پوچھتی ہے؟

39. Read the following.

۱ - ان کے پاس میٹھے سیب ہوں تو لے لو۔

۲ - ڈاکٹر صاحب دکان میں ہوں تو ان سے پوچھیے۔

۳ - اگر بچہ وہاں ہو تو اس کو یہ کتاب دے دو۔

۴ - اگر آپ کو فرصت ہو تو کل آئیے۔

۵ - اگر وہ لڑکا یہاں آئے تو اچھا ہو۔

۶ - آپ کی والدہ یہاں آئیں تو اچھا ہو۔

۷ - وہ لڑکیاں اگر آئیں تو ان سے ملیے۔

۸ - وہ اگر یہاں آئیں تو شاید آپ سے ملیں۔

۹ - اگر وہ یہ کتاب پسند کرے تو اس کو دے دو۔

۱۰ - اگر ان کی بہن وہاں ہوئیں تو ان سے بات کرونگا۔

۱۱ - تم وہاں جاؤ تو ان سے ضرور ملو۔

۱۲ - اگر وہ یہاں آنا پسند کرے گی تو یہاں آئے گی۔

۱۳ - اگر ڈاکٹر صاحب وہاں ہوں گے تو ضرور آئیں گے۔

۱۴ - وہ یہاں آئے گا تو آپ سے ضرور ملے گا۔

۱۵ - اگر وہ یہاں آتا تو اچھا ہوتا۔

۱۶ - آپ وہاں جلدی جاتے تو ان سے ملتے۔

۱۷ - تم یہاں چار بجے آتے تو ان سے ملاقات کرتے۔

۱۸ - اگر آپ یہاں کچھ دن اور رہتے تو اچھا ہوتا۔

۱۹ - اگر نجمہ یہاں آئی ہوتیں تو یہاں ہوتیں، وہ تو کراچی میں ہیں۔

۲۰ - اگر تم کل چلتے تو میں پسند کرتا۔

40. **Fill in the blanks using proper form of the Verb given in the parenthesis.**

۱- اگر تم کو فرصت ـــــ تو آج آؤ [ہونا]

۲- احمد کے پاس کچھ کتابیں ـــــ تو لے آؤ [ہونا]

۳- اگر وہ آپ سے کچھ سوال ـــــ تو کیا آپ پسند کریں گے [پوچھنا]

۴- نجمہ اگر جلدی ـــــ تو آپ سے ملے گی [آنا]

۵- اگر وہ چار بجے ـــــ تو شاید آپ سے ملے [جانا]

۶- انہوں نے یہ کتاب پسند کی تو میں وہ ان کو ـــــ [دے دینا]

۷- تم اگر نو بجے ـــــ تو ان سے ملتے [جانا]

۸- نجمہ، اگر تم کل وہاں نہیں ـــــ تو بری بات ہوگی [جانا]

۹- تم شام کو نہ آتے تو اچھا ـــــ [ہونا]

۱۰۔ اگر تم کل میرے ساتھ کھانا ـــــ تو میں پسند کرونگا [کھانا]

۱۱۔ میرے والد اگر وہاں ـــــ تو ان سے پوچھونگا [ہونا]

۱۲۔ ڈاکٹر صاحب وہاں ہوں تو ان سے ـــــ [پوچھنا]

۱۳۔ اگر وہاں جاؤں گا تو ان سے ضرور ـــــ [ملنا]

۱۴۔ ان کی بہن اگر ـــــ تو اچھا ہوگا [جانا]

۱۵۔ اگر تم نے یہ کتاب نہ ـــــ تو اچھا نہ ہوگا [پڑھنا]

۱۶۔ میں وہاں کچھ دن اور رہتا تو ان سے بھی ـــــ [ملنا]

۱۷۔ اگر آپ کراچی ـــــ تو ان سے ضرور ملیں [جانا]

۱۸۔ نجمہ کچھ دن اس کے ساتھ کام ـــــ تو اچھا ہوگا [کرنا]

۱۹۔ آپ نے ان سے بات کی تو وہ پسند ـــــ [کرنا]

۲۰۔ اگر یہ پھل اچھے ـــــ تو لے لو۔ [ہونا]

41. Read the following.

۱۔ تم اس وقت کیا کر رہے ہو ؟

۲۔ وہ کل بازار جا رہا تھا۔

۳۔ نجمہ کی بہن آج نہیں آ رہی ہیں۔

۴۔ وہ اس وقت کھانا کھا رہا تھا۔

۵۔ کون سی کتاب پڑھ رہے ہو؟

۶- آپ کے ساتھ اور کون جا رہا ہے ؟

Compare the above above with the following.

۱- تم کس اسکول میں پڑھتے ہو ؟

۲- کیا وہ روز بازار جاتا ہے ؟

۳- وہ کبھی کبھی شام کو یہاں نہیں آتے ۔

۴- وہ دن میں کھانا کس وقت کھاتے ہیں ؟

۵- تم آج کل کیا کرتے ہو ؟

۶- اس گھر میں کتنے لوگ رہتے ہیں ؟

What factors require the use of [rahaa] in one and Imperfect Participle in the other? Study the following sentences and make sure of these inwhich either of the two constructions can be used with or without a change in meaning.

۱- ٹھہریے ، ابھی آتا ہوں ۔

۲- وہ بونا میں کیا کر رہا ہے ۔

۳- ہم لوگ اس وقت بازار جا رہے تھے ۔

۴- ان کے بھائی بھی اس اسکول میں پڑھتے ہیں ۔

۵۔ آپ کون سی کتاب پسند کرتے ہیں ؟

۶۔ میں اس وقت ان سے ایک سوال پوچھ رہا تھا ۔

۷۔ آپ کا سامان کون لاتا ہے ؟

۸۔ وہ آج کل احمد سے بات نہیں کرتا ہے ۔

۹۔ نجمہ کے اسکول کی لڑکیاں کہاں جا رہی ہیں ؟

۱۰۔ کیا وہ اس وقت کسی سے بات کر رہے ہیں ؟

42. Read the following sentences.

۱۔ کیوں صاحب، کیا چاہتے ہیں ؟

۲۔ کچھ نئے کپڑے خریدنا چاہتا ہوں ۔

۳۔ وہ یہاں نہیں رہنا چاہتا ۔

۴۔ اس وقت تو وہ کچھ آرام کرنا چاہتی ہے ۔

۵۔ تم تو ہر وقت آرام کرنا چاہتے ہو ۔

۶۔ بہت دنوں سے آپ سے ملنا چاہتا تھا ۔

۷۔ اگر تم ان سے ملنا چاہتے ہو تو جلدی کرو ۔

۸۔ آپ سے ایک بات پوچھنا چاہتا تھا ۔

۹۔ شاید وہ بھی آپ کے ساتھ جانا چاہے ۔

۱۰ - اگر آپ آنا چاہیں تو ان کے ساتھ آجائیے ۔

۱۱ - میں نے جانا چاہا مگر دیر ہو گئی ۔

۱۲ - اس نے کچھ سوال پوچھنے چاہے ۔

۱۳ - ان لڑکیوں نے نئے کپڑے خریدنا چاہے ۔

۱۴ - نجمہ کے بھائی نے کچھ ساڑیاں خریدنی چاہیں ۔

۱۵ - میں نے ان سے بات کرنی چاہی، مگر ان کو فرصت نہ تھی ۔

43. Change the Verbal phrase in the following sentences to Infinitive plus [Caahna] constructions. Disregard the changes in meaning., Examples:

ا - وہ بازار جاتا ہے ← وہ بازار جانا چاہتا ہے ۔

ب - تم نے کون سی ساڑی خریدی ← تم نے کون سی ساڑی خریدنی چاہی ۔

۱ - میں بھی آپ کے ساتھ جاؤنگا ۔

۲ - اس گھر میں کون رہتا ہے ؟

۳ - میں تو ہمیشہ آپ سے بات کرتا تھا ۔

۴ - اگر تم ان سے ملتے ہو تو کوئی بری بات نہیں ۔

۵- انہوں نے وہاں کتنی کتابیں خریدیں ؟

۶- احمد نے حامد سے ملاقات کی ۔

۷- تم لوگ تین بجے کہاں گئے تھے ۔

۸- کیا تم ان کے ساتھ جا رہے ہو ؟

۹- انہوں نے مجھے پرانے کپڑے دئے ۔

۱۰- آپ اپنے بھائی سے ملنے کب جائیں گے ؟

۱۱- وہ اسکول کے لئے کتابیں خریدتا تھا ۔

۱۲- سلیم نے صرف ایک کتاب خریدی ۔

۱۳- میں نے وہاں کچھ نہیں خریدا ۔

۱۴- انہوں نے تم سے کیا پوچھا ؟

۱۵- کیا آپ آج شام کو ان کے ساتھ آئینگے ؟

44. Read the following sentences.

۱- کیوں صاحب ، آپ کو کیا چاہئے ۔

۲- مجھے کچھ تازے پھل چاہئیں ۔

۳- ان کو صرف ایک سیب چاہئے ۔

۴- سلیم کو پڑھنے کے لئے ایک کتاب چاہئے ۔

۵- حامد کو اپنی بہن کے لئے کچھ ساڑیاں چاہئیں۔

Compare the above with the following.

۱- کیوں صاحب، آپ کیا چاہتے ہیں؟
۲- میں کچھ تازے پھل خریدنا چاہتا ہوں۔
۳- وہ صرف ایک سیب چاہتے ہیں۔
۴- سلیم پڑھنے کے لئے ایک کتاب چاہتا ہے۔
۵- حامد اپنی بہن کے لئے کچھ ساڑیاں خریدنا چاہتے ہیں۔

Read the following sentences.

۱- ان کو رہنے کیلئے ایک گھر چاہیئے۔
۲- حامد کو کچھ کتابیں چاہئیں۔
۳- مجھے کچھ خط لکھنے کا کاغذ چاہیئے۔
۴- ان لڑکیوں کو بہت سی چیزیں چاہئیں۔
۵- ان لڑکوں کو نئے جوتے چاہئیں۔
۶- مجھے ان سوالوں کے جواب چاہئیں۔
۷- سلیم صاحب کو اپنی بہن کے لئے تازے سیب چاہئیں۔

۸- تم کو اپنی والدہ کے لئے کون سی دوا چاہئے۔

۹- مجھے گھر کا کام کرنے کے لئے ایک نوکر چاہئے۔

۱۰- یہ کام کرنے کیلئے کافی فرصت چاہئے۔

۱۱- ان کو گھر جانے کے لئے چھٹی چاہئے۔

۱۲- مجھے اپنے دوست کو دینے کے لئے کوئی اچھی چیز چاہئے۔

45. Read the following sentences.

۱- تم کو آگرہ ضرور جانا چاہئے۔

۲- اگر تم ان سے ملنا چاہتے ہو تو تم کو جلدی جانا چاہئے۔

۳- ان کو کچھ نئے کپڑے خریدنے چاہئیں۔

۴- آپ کو یہ ساڑی ضرور خریدنی چاہئے تھی۔

۵- مجھ کو وہاں ضرور جانا چاہئے تھا۔

۶- لاہور میں آپ کو ان کے ساتھ نہ ٹھیرنا چاہئے۔

۷- کھانا ہمیشہ آہستہ آہستہ کھانا چاہئے۔

۸- اگر آپ ان سے ملنا چاہتے تھے تو آپ کو کل ہی جانا چاہئے تھا۔

۹- تم کو اس سوال کا جواب اپنے بھائی سے پوچھنا چاہئے۔

۱۰- مجھے ان سے ملنے کیلئے کس وقت آنا چاہئے؟

46. Change the following sentences according to the examples below.

۱- میں جانا چاہتا ہوں ← مجھے جانا چاہئے۔

ب- میں نے کچھ کتابیں خریدنی چاہیں ← مجھے کچھ کتابیں خریدنی چاہئیں۔

۱- آپ ان سے کب ملنا چاہتے ہیں؟

۲- نجمہ نے کیا خریدنا چاہا؟

۳- احمد ایک نیا جوتا خریدنا چاہتا ہے۔

۴- وہ کچھ دن کیلئے باہر جانا چاہتا ہے۔

۵- حامد نے اسکو کچھ پیسے دینے چاہے۔

۶- وہ آپ سے ایک سوال پوچھنا چاہتے ہیں۔

۷- یہ لڑکیاں کچھ دن کے بعد یہاں آنا چاہتی ہیں۔

۸- دلّی میں میں اپنے دوست کے ساتھ ٹھیرنا چاہتا ہوں۔

۹- آپ اس دکان سے کیا کیا چیزیں لینا چاہتے ہیں؟

۱۰- میں دو دن کے بعد آگرہ جانا چاہتا ہوں۔

47. Read the following sentences and compare them with the above.

۱- آپ کو ان سے کب ملنا ہے ؟

۲- نجمہ کو کیا خریدنا ہے ؟

۳- احمد کو ایک نیا جوتا خریدنا ہے -

۴- اسے کچھ دن کے لئے باہر جانا ہے -

۵- حامد کو اسے کچھ پیسے دینے ہیں -

۶- انہیں آپ سے ایک سوال پوچھنا ہے -

۷- ان لڑکیوں کو کچھ دن کے لئے یہاں آنا ہے -

۸- دلّی میں مجھے اپنے دوست کے یہاں ٹھیرنا ہے -

۹- آپ کو اس دکان سے کیا کیا چیزیں لینی ہیں ؟

۱۰- مجھے دو دن کے بعد آگرہ جانا ہے -

Also read the following sentences.

۱- آپ کو بھی ان سے ملنا ہوگا -

۲- تم کو کل سویرے یہاں سے نکل جانا ہے -

۳- حامد کو اپنی والدہ کے لئے دوا لانی تھی -

۴- نجمہ کو اپنی دوستوں سے ملنا تھا، اس لئے وہ نہیں آئی -

۵- ان کو بھی اپنا گھر بیچنا ہوگا -

۶- مجھے اپنے دوست کو کچھ کتابیں دینی تھیں ۔

۷- اگر تم کو ان سے ملنا ہو تو جلدی آؤ ۔

۸- ان سے ملنے کیلئے تم کو جلدی آنا ہوگا ۔

۹- مجھے وہاں جانا ہوتا تو آپ کے پاس کیوں آتا ۔

۱۰- چونکہ ان کو کچھ ساڑیاں خریدنی تھیں، اس لئے وہ بازار گئی ہیں ۔

48. Read the following sentences.

۱- کیا آپ میرا یہ کام کر سکتے ہیں ؟

۲- میں ان سے ملنے کل جا سکتا ہوں ۔

۳- نجمہ آنا تو چاہتی ہے، لیکن آ نہیں سکتی ۔

۴- وہ تم کو صرف ایک روپیہ دے سکتا ہے ۔

۵- جلدی میں وہ زیادہ باتیں نہ بتا سکے ۔

۶- یہ کام اتنی جلدی تو نہیں ہو سکے گا ۔

۷- اگر وہ آ سکے تو اس کو اپنے ساتھ لاؤ ۔

۸- میں اتنی مہنگی ساڑیاں نہیں خرید سکتا ۔

۹- آپ لاہور میں حامد کے ساتھ ٹھہر سکتے ہیں ۔

۱۰- مجھے کل تو آنا چاہئے، لیکن آ نہیں سکتا ہوں ۔

۱۱ - وہ ابھی انگریزی نہیں پڑھ سکتے ۔

۱۲ - مجھے آج تو فرصت نہیں ہو سکتی ، لیکن کل ضرور آ سکتا ہوں ۔

۱۳ - کیا میں تم سے ایک سوال پوچھ سکتا ہوں ؟

۱۴ - نہیں ، حامد صاحب ، آج رات کو تو ہم لوگ نہیں آ سکیں گے ۔

49. Fill in the blanks using proper forms of [Sakna.]

۱ - میرا کام کون کر ——— ہے ؟

۲ - کیا آپ اپنے دوست کے ساتھ ٹھیر ——— ہیں ؟

۳ - آج تو میں صرف ایک ساڑی خرید ——— ہوں ۔

۴ - ان کو بہت کام ہے ، اس لئے وہ کل نہیں آ ——— گے ۔

۵ - یہ کام کتنی جلدی ہو ——— ہے ؟

۶ - تم چار بجے آ ——— ہو تو ضرور آؤ ۔

۷ - میں آج تو آپ کا کام نہیں کر ——— گا ۔

۸ - حامد آپ کی دوا بازار سے لا ——— گا ۔

۹ - یہ لڑکیاں ابھی انگریزی نہیں پڑھ ——— ۔

۱۰ - چونکہ وہ جلدی نہ آیا اس لئے حامد سے نہ مل ——— ۔

50. Read the following sentences.

۱- مجھے یہ کتاب زیادہ پسند نہیں۔

۲- تم کو کیسا کھانا پسند ہے۔

۳- حامد کو شاید میرا پتہ معلوم نہیں۔

۴- اگر آپ کا گھر مجھے معلوم ہوتا تو میں ضرور آتا۔

۵- ان لڑکیوں کو ان کا کالج پسند نہیں۔

۶- ان صاحب کو اپنا گھر بہت پسند ہے۔

۷- سلیم کو اس کتاب کے بارے میں کچھ معلوم نہیں۔

۸- مجھے ان کے یہاں آنے کے بارے میں زیادہ معلوم نہیں۔

۹- اگر آپ کو ہندوستانی کھانا پسند ہو تو آج شام کو ہمارے گھر آئیے۔

۱۰- مجھے کئی دن سے ان کا خط نہیں ملا۔

۱۱- اس دکان پر کس طرح کی کتابیں ملتی ہیں؟

۱۲- اگر مجھے فرصت ملی تو شام کو آؤنگا۔

۱۳- کیا آپ کو یہ کام کرنے کی فرصت مل سکتی ہے؟

۱۴- ان کو اس گھر میں رہنا پسند نہ تھا۔

۱۵- حامد سے سلیم کے گھر کا پتہ مل سکتا ہے۔

51. Some of the above sentences can be replaced by Direct situational variants., Examples:

۱ - مجھے یہ کتاب زیادہ پسند نہیں ←

میں یہ کتاب زیادہ پسند نہیں کرتا

ب - سلیم کو اس کتاب کے بارے میں کچھ معلوم نہیں ←

اس کتاب کے بارے میں سلیم کچھ نہیں جانتا -

ج - مجھے کئی دن سے ان کا خط نہیں ملا -

میرے پاس کئی دن سے ان کا خط نہیں آیا -

Situational variants for [milnaa] constructions will be quite diverse. Given below are some Direct constructions; change them to proper Indirect constructions keeping semantic loss at a minimum.

۱ - وہ ہر روز یہاں آنا پسند نہیں کرتے -

۲ - حامد نے مجھے سلیم کا پتہ دیا -

۳ - اگر آپ فرصت پائیں تو آج شام کو ضرور آئیے -

۴ - کیا آپ ان صاحب کے بارے میں جانتے ہیں ؟

۵ - شاید آپ امریکی کھانا پسند نہیں کرتے ؟

۶- اس دکان پر روز تازے پھل ہوتے ہیں ۔

۷- وہ اپنے دوست کے گھر میں ٹھہرنا پسند نہیں کرتے تھے ۔

۸- اگر آپ اس بارے میں کچھ جانتے ہیں تو مجھے بتائیے ۔

۹- میرا خط اب تک ان کے پاس نہیں پہنچا ۔

۱۰- سلیم ان کا نام جانتا تھا ۔

اب		ab	now
اب تک		ab-tak	until now
ابھی		abhii	just now; [ab + hii]
آپ		aap	you (polite speech)
اپنا		apnaa	one's own
اتنا		itnaa	this much; this many
آج		aaj	today
آجکل		aaj-kal	now-a-days
اچھّا		acchaa	good
احمد	M	ahmad	p.n.
آدمی	M	aadmii	man
ادھر		udhar	in that direction; there
اِدھر		idhar	in this direction; here
آرام	M	aaraam	comfort, rest
آرام کرنا	NM	aaraam karnaa	to rest
اس		us, is	oblique singular of [woo] or [yee]
اس طرف		is-taraf	this side; in this direction; also [us-taraf]
اسکول	M	iskuul	Eng., school
اس لئے		is-liyee	therefore
اسی		isii, usii	this very = اس ہی ; [is + hii] or [us + hii]
اُسے		usee	same as [us + koo]
اگر		agar	if
آگرہ	M	aagraa	Agra
امریکہ	M	amriikaa	America
امریکن		amriikan	Eng., American

امریکی		amriikii	American
ان		un, in	his, her, oblique plural of [woo] or [yee]
آنا		aanaa	to come
انارکلی	M	anaar-kalii	name of one of the quarters in the city of Lahore
انگریزی	F	angreezii	the English language
انہوں		unhõõ	oblique plural of [woo] or [yee], used only before [-nee]
انہیں		inhẽẽ, unhẽẽ	same as [in + koo] or [un + koo]
اور		aur	and; more of the same
آہستہ		aahistaa	slowly
ایسا		aisaa	such
ایک		eek	one, a, an

بات	F	baat	matter
بات کرنا	NF	baat karnaa	to talk, to converse with X [-see]
بارے میں		baaree-mẽẽ	about X [-kee]
بازار	M	baazaar	market
باہر		baahar	out; outside
بائیں		baaẽẽ	left side; to the left
بتانا	N	bataanaa	to tell
بجے		-bajee	-o'clock
بچّہ	M	baccaa	child
بخار	M	buxaar	fever
بخار ہونا	KM	buxaar hoonaa	to have fever
بڑا		baRaa	big; elder

بس	F	bas	Eng., bus
بعد		baad	after X [-kee]
بلکہ		bal-ki	rather; on the contrary
بہت		bahot	many, much, very
بہن	F	bahen	sister
بھائی	M	bhaaii	brother
بھی		bhii	too; even; also
بیٹا	M	beeTaa	son
بیچنا	N	beecnaa	to sell

پاس		paas	with, near X [-kee]
پاکستانی		paakistaanii	Pakistani, a resident of Pakistan
پانا	N	paanaa	to find; to receive
پانچ		pããc	five (5)
پتہ	M	pataa	address; also پتا
پر		-par	at; on
پرانا		puraanaa	old, ancient; used only with inanimate nouns
پڑھنا	N	paRhnaa	to read; to study
پسند کرنا	N	pasand-karnaa	to like
پوچھنا	N	puuchnaa	to ask X [-see] X1
پونا	M	puunaa	Poona
پہلے		pahlee	before; before X [-kee]
پہنچنا		pahũcnaa	to reach, arrive
پھر		phir	again; then
پھل	M	phal	fruit
پیسہ	M	paisaa	money; lit., paisa, 100th part of a rupee

تازہ		taazaa	fresh
تصویر	F	taswiir	picture
تک		-tak	till, up to
تم		tum	you (used for equals)
تمہارا		tumhaaraa	your
تمہیں		tumhẽẽ	same as [tum + koo]
تو		too	then
تھا		thaa	was
تھوڑا		thooRaa	a little
تین		tiin	three (3)

ٹھیرنا		Thairnaa	to stay; to stop; also written ٹھہرنا : [Thaharnaa]

جانا		jaanaa	to go
جاننا	N	jaannaa	to know
جگہ	F	jagah	place
جلدی	F	jaldii	hurry; adv. quickly, soon
جلدی کرنا	NF	jaldii karnaa	to hurry
جواب	M	jawaab	answer
جواب دینا	NM	jawaab deenaa	to answer to X [-koo] about X1 [-kaa]
جوتا	M	juutaa	shoe
جی نہیں		jii-nahĩĩ	no
جی ہاں		jii-hãã	yes

چار		caar	four (4)
چاہنا	N	caahnaa	to desire, to want
چونکہ		cũũ-ki	since
چھ		chee	six (6)
چھٹی	F	chuTTii	vacation, holiday; leave
چھٹی ہونا	KF	chuTTii hoonaa	to be free, to have vacation
چھوٹا		chooTaa	small; younger
چیز	F	ciiz	thing

حامد	M	haamid	p.n.

خراب		xaraab	bad
خریدنا	N	xariidnaa	to buy
خط	M	xat	letter

دائیں		daaẽẽ	right (side); to the right
دس		das	ten (10)
دکان	F	dukaan	shop
دکاندار	M	dukaan-daar	shop-keeper
دلّی	F	dillii	Delhi; also دہلی : [dehlii]
دن	M	din	day
دو		doo	two (2)
دوا	F	dawaa	medicine

دوست	MF	doost	friend
دوسرا		duusraa	other; second
دیر	F	deer	lapse of time; delay
دیر ہونا	KF	deer hoonaa	to be late
دیکھنا	N	deekhnaa	to see
دینا	N	deenaa	to give
دے دینا	N	dee-deenaa	to give

ڈاکٹر	M	DaakTar	Eng., doctor

رات	F	raat	night
راستہ	M	raastaa	way
روپیہ	M	rupyaa	rupee
روز	M	rooz	day; adv., every day
رہنا		rahnaa	to live; to remain

زیادہ		ziyaadaa	much; more

سا		saa	see Section 75ff.
سات		saat	seven (7)
ساتھ		saath	with X [-kee]
ساڑی	F	saaRii	sari
سال	M	saal	year

سامان	M	saamaan	baggage, things
سب		sab	all
سڑک	F	saRak	road
سکنا		saknaa	to be able to I (root)
سلیم	M	saliim	p.n.
سوال	M	sawaal	question
سوچنا	N	soocnaa	to think
سویرا	M	saweeraa	morning; adv., early
سے		-see	by; from
سیب	M	seeb	apple

شام	F	šaam	evening
شاید		šaayad	perhaps
شروع کرنا	N	šuruu-karnaa	to begin
شکاگو	M	šikaagoo	Chicago
شکیل	M	šakiil	p.n.
شہر	M	šaher	city

صاحب	saaheb	gentleman; a term of address used after the names of men to show respect
صاحبہ	saahebaa	lady; a term of address used afte the names of ladies to show respect
صرف	sirf	only

ضرور	zaruur	certainly

طالب علم	MF	taalib-ilm	student
طرف	F	taraf	side; adv., toward X [-kii]
عورت	F	aurat	woman
فرصت	F	fursat	leisure
فرصت ہونا	KF	fursat hoonaa	to be free
فوراً		fauran	immediately
کاغذ	M	kaaGaz	paper
کافی		kaafii	enough
کالا		kaalaa	black
کالج	M	kaalij	Eng., college
کام	M	kaam	work
کام کرنا	NM	kaam karnaa	to work
کب		kab	when
کب تک		kab-tak	how long
کبھی کبھی		kabhii-kabhii	sometimes
کپڑا	M	kapRaa	cloth; clothes
کتاب	F	kitaab	book
کتنا		kitnaa	how many; how much
کچھ		kuch	some
کراچی	M	karaacii	Karachi

کرنا	N	karnaa	to do (something)
کس		kis	oblique singular of [kaun]
کسان	M	kisaan	farmer
کس طرح		kis-tarah	in what manner
کس طرف		kis-taraf	where; lit., which side
کل	M	kal	tomorrow; yesterday
کن		kin	oblique plural of [kaun]
کو		-koo	to
کون		kaun	who
کون سا		kaun-saa	which
کوئی		kooii	any
کہاں		kahãã	where
کھانا	M	khaanaa	food
کھانا	N	khaanaa	to eat
کیا		kyaa	what
کیسا		kaisaa	how; of what kind
کیلا	M	keelaa	banana
کیوں		kyõõ	why
کئی		kaii	several

گھر	M	ghar	house

لال		laal	red
لانا		laanaa	to bring
لاہور	M	laahoor	Lahore
لڑکا	M	laRkaa	boy

لڑکی	F	laRkii	girl
لکھنا	N	likhnaa	to write
لوگ	M	loog	people
لیکن		leekin	but
لینا	N	leenaa	to take
لئے		liyee	for X [-kee]

مت		mat	prohibitive particle; do not
مجھے		mujhee	same as [mujh-koo]
محمود	M	mahmuud	p.n.
معلوم ہونا	K	maaluum-hoonaa	to know
مکان	M	makaan	house
ملاقات	F	mulaaqaat	meeting
ملاقات کرنا	NF	mulaaqaat karnaa	to meet with X [-see]
ملنا	K	milnaa	to get; to receive
ملنا		milnaa	to be available
ملنا		milnaa	to meet X [-see]
مہنگا		mahãgaa	expensive
میٹھا		miiThaa	sweet
میرا		meeraa	my
میں		-mẽẽ	in
میں		mãĩ	I

نام	M	naam	name
نجمہ	F	najmaa	p.n.
نکلنا		nikalnaa	to come out
نکل جانا		nikal-jaanaa	to go out

نو		nau	nine (9)
نوکر	M	naukar	servant
نہ		na	not
نہیں		nahĩĩ	not
نیا		nayaa	new

والد	M	waalid	father
والدہ	F	waalidaa	mother
والدین	M	waalidain	parents
وقت	M	waqt	time
وہ		woo	he, she, it, they, those
وہاں		wahãã	there

ہر		har	every
ہرا		haraa	green
ہم		ham	we
ہمارا		hamaaraa	our
ہمیشہ		hameešaa	always
ہندوستانی		hindustaanii	Indian
ہونا		hoonaa	to be
ہی		hii	emphatic particle; [X hii] = just X

یا		yaa	or
یہ		yee	this; these
یہاں		yahãã	here